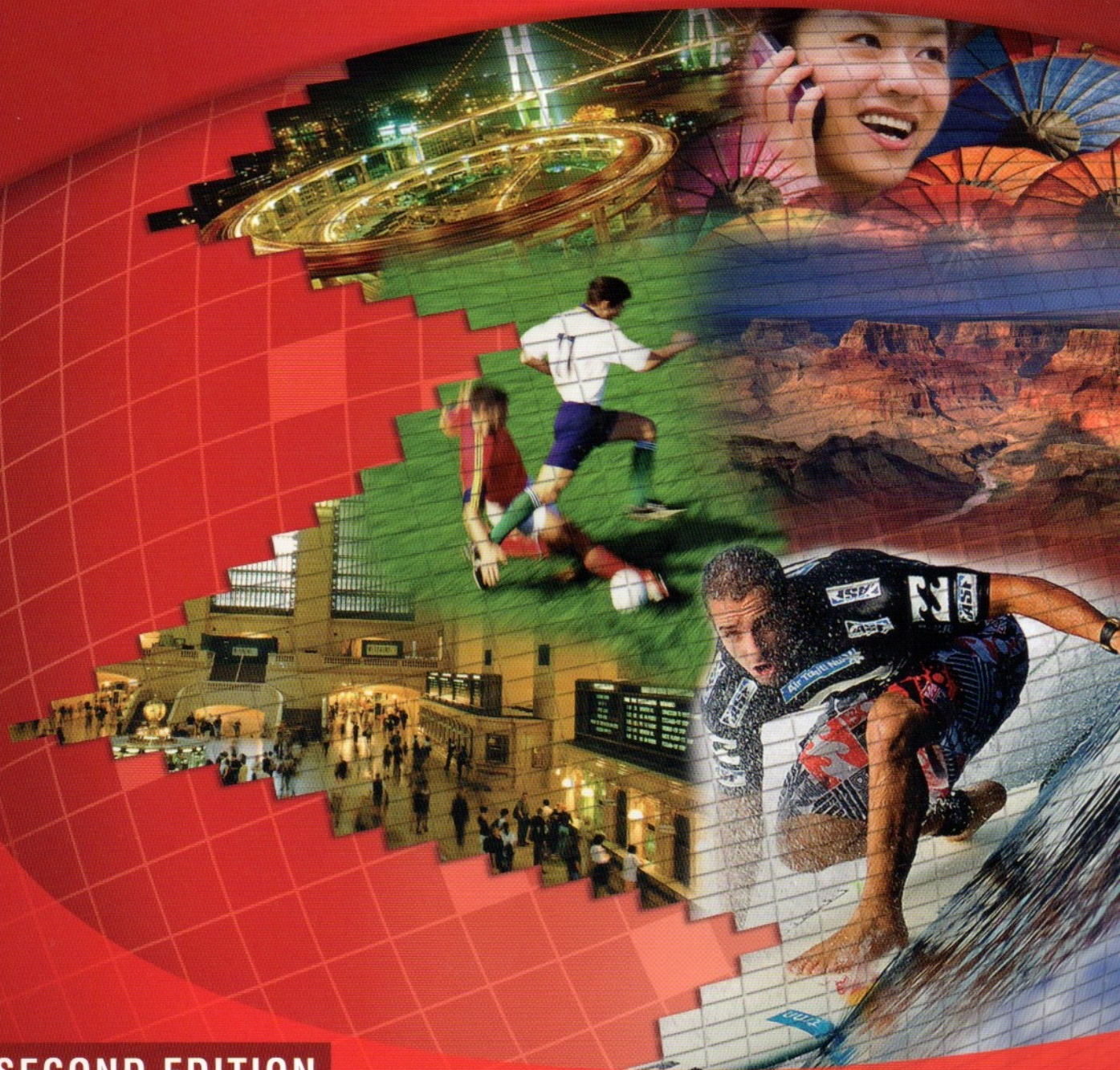


American Headway

THE WORLD'S MOST TRUSTED ENGLISH COURSE

STUDENT PRACTICE
Multi-ROM

1



SECOND EDITION

Liz and John Soars

OXFORD

What is on the Student Practice Multi-ROM?

The Student Practice Multi-ROM has three parts:

1. Interactive grammar, vocabulary, writing, and video activities
2. Audio material from the video section
3. One free **oxfordenglishtesting.com** practice test. Read below to find out how to access your test.

How do I access my online practice test?

Go to **oxfordenglishtesting.com** and choose a practice test. You will need:

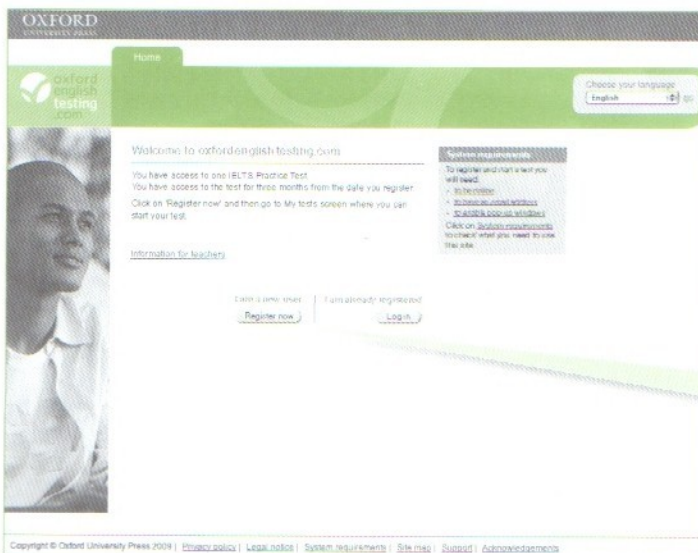
- to be connected to the Internet to take the test.
- to have an e-mail address (to register).

To access your practice test for the first time:

1. Put the Multi-ROM into the CD drive of your computer.
2. A screen will appear giving you two options. Click the first one to access your tests.

What do I do when I get to the website?

When you see this screen, follow steps 1–3. If the screen does not appear, follow step 4.



1 Choose a language from the drop-down list and click Go. The practice test will be in English. All other web pages will appear in the language you select here.

2 Click on the Register now button and fill in the details. Give an e-mail address and make up a password to use every time you log in.

3 Click on Register. Then click on Save registration details. Click on My tests to log in. You will have one year to use the practice test.

4 If the above page does not appear, go to www.oxfordenglishtesting.com/unlock. You will be asked to click Register now if you are a new user. Fill in the registration form and enter the unlock code printed on your Multi-ROM. Each code is unique and looks like this: 9219e6-9471d9-cf7c79-a5143b.

To access your test in the future, go to **oxfordenglishtesting.com** and log in using your e-mail and password.

American ¹ Headway

THE WORLD'S MOST TRUSTED ENGLISH COURSE

SECOND EDITION

Liz and John Soars

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Scope and Sequence

LANGUAGE INPUT

UNIT	LANGUAGE FOCUS	VOCABULARY	EVERYDAY ENGLISH
1 Hello everybody! page 2	Verb to be <i>am/is/are</i> <i>I'm from Toronto. p. 2</i> <i>He's a student. p. 5</i> Possessive adjectives <i>my, your, his, her p. 2, p. 4</i>	Countries <i>Mexico, Japan p. 4</i> Using a bilingual dictionary p. 6 Everyday objects <i>a key, a newspaper p. 6</i> Plural nouns <i>bags, apples p. 6</i>	Hello and good-bye <i>Telephone numbers p. 7</i> <i>How are you?</i> <i>See you later! p. 7</i>
2 Meeting people page 8	Verb to be <i>Questions and negatives</i> <i>What's her first name? p. 8</i> <i>She isn't married. p. 9</i> Negatives and short answers <i>No, she isn't. p. 9</i> Possessive's <i>Patrick's daughter p. 10</i>	Family <i>mother, uncle p. 10</i> Opposite adjectives <i>old-young p. 12</i> Food and drink <i>hamburger and fries, tea, coffee p. 14</i>	In a cafe <i>Prices p. 14</i> <i>Can I have ... ?</i> <i>How much is ... ? p. 15</i>
3 The world of work page 16	Present Simple 1 <i>he/she/it p. 16</i> <i>She works 16 hours a day. p. 17</i> Questions and negatives <i>Does he speak Spanish? He doesn't speak Spanish or French. p. 18</i>	Verbs <i>help, make, deliver p. 20</i> Jobs <i>A pilot flies planes. p. 22</i>	What time is it? <i>It's a quarter after five.</i> <i>It's just after six o'clock. p. 23</i>
4 Take it easy! page 24	Present Simple 2 <i>I/you/we/they</i> <i>I go to the gym.</i> <i>I don't go out after work.</i> <i>Why do you like your job? p. 25</i>	Verbs <i>relax, go out, play p. 25</i> Leisure activities <i>dancing, skiing p. 26</i>	Social expressions <i>I'm sorry.</i> <i>Excuse me? p. 31</i>
Stop and check 1 Teacher's Book p. 127			
5 Where do you live? page 32	There is/are <i>There's a television. p. 32</i> How many ... ? <i>How many books are there? p. 32</i> Prepositions of place <i>in front of the sofa p. 33</i> some and any <i>There are some cups.</i> <i>There aren't any glasses. p. 34</i> this, that, these, those <i>This is the kitchen.</i> <i>What's in these cabinets? p. 38</i>	Rooms <i>living room, kitchen p. 32</i> Things in the house <i>armchair, lamp, cabinets, washing machine p. 32</i> What's in your bag? <i>bus ticket, cell phone, keys p. 35</i> Places <i>movie theater, cafe p. 39</i>	Directions 1 <i>Is there a post office near here?</i> <i>Yes, it's over there. p. 39</i>
6 Can you speak English? page 40	can/can't <i>She can walk now.</i> <i>We can't write. p. 40</i> was/were <i>Where were you yesterday? p. 42</i> could <i>I could swim when I was five. p. 42</i> was born <i>She was born in England. p. 43</i>	Countries and languages <i>France, French p. 40</i> Verbs <i>translate, check, laugh p. 41</i> Words that sound the same <i>I, eye; no, know p. 46</i>	On the phone <i>Directory Assistance p. 46</i> <i>Can I speak to Jo, please?</i> <i>I'll get her. p. 47</i>

SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

READING

Svetlana and Tiago p. 5

An e-mail from the U.S. p. 12

Seamus McSporran – the man
with twelve jobs! p. 20

My favorite season p. 28

The White House p. 36

Young and talented p. 44

SPEAKING

Introducing yourself p. 3

Talking about you p. 9
Your family p. 11

Asking about a friend or relative
p. 19

Leisure activities p. 26
What's your favorite season?
p. 28
A questionnaire – Do you have
a healthy lifestyle? p. 30

What's in your picture? p. 33
Talking about where you live p. 38

A questionnaire – What can
you do? p. 41
What can computers do? p. 41
Role play – interview p. 44

LISTENING

The alphabet song p. 6

An e-mail from the U.S. –
Where is So-young? p. 12

Seamus's day p. 21

My favorite season –
Where are they? p. 28

What's in Yoshi's briefcase? p. 35
Homes around the world p. 38

Lucia can't cook p. 41

WRITING

Introducing yourself p. 5

Write about your class p. 12

Natural writing
Using pronouns p. 94

Informal letters
To a pen pal p. 95

Describing where you live
Linking words *and, so,*
but, because p. 96

Formal letters
Applying for a job p. 97

LANGUAGE INPUT

UNIT	LANGUAGE FOCUS	VOCABULARY	EVERYDAY ENGLISH
7 Then and now page 48	Past Simple 1 Regular verbs <i>She talked to interesting people.</i> p. 48 Irregular verbs <i>His father got a job in New York.</i> p. 50 Time expressions <i>last night</i> <i>yesterday morning</i> p. 57	Verbs <i>earn, talk, study</i> p. 49 Verbs <i>get, leave, become</i> p. 50 Words that go together <i>drive a car, train station</i> p. 54	What's the date? <i>the first of April</i> p. 55
8 A date to remember page 56	Past Simple 2 negatives – ago <i>People didn't drive cars 100 years ago.</i> p. 56 Time expressions <i>at seven o'clock, on Saturday, in 2002</i> p. 57	Relationships <i>fall in love, get engaged</i> p. 60 Spelling and silent letters <i>answer, thought</i> p. 59 Phonetic symbols <i>/wɜːk/ /'liːən/</i> p. 59	Special occasions <i>Thanksgiving</i> <i>Happy Birthday!</i> p. 61
Stop and check 2 Teacher's Book p. 129			
9 Food you like! page 62	Count and noncount nouns <i>apples, apple juice</i> p. 62 <i>I like ... ? I'd like ... ?</i> <i>Do you like tea? Would you like some tea?</i> p. 63 <i>a and some</i> <i>a cake, some cake</i> p. 64 <i>much and many</i> <i>There isn't much milk.</i> <i>There aren't many eggs.</i> p. 64	Food and drink <i>chocolate, pizza, cheese, apple juice</i> p. 62 <i>chopsticks, noodles, fish</i> p. 67	Polite offers and requests <i>Could you pass the salt, please?</i> <i>Could I have a glass of water, please?</i> <i>Can you give me the recipe?</i> <i>Can I see the menu?</i> p. 69
10 Looking good! page 70	Present Continuous <i>I'm wearing blue jeans.</i> <i>Who is smiling?</i> p. 70 Whose is it? <i>Whose dog is this?</i> p. 72 Possessive pronouns <i>mine, yours, hers</i> p. 72	Clothes <i>hat, coat, shirt</i> p. 70 Describing people <i>blonde hair, blue eyes</i> p. 70 Describing feelings <i>bored, worried</i> p. 76	In a clothing store <i>What color are you looking for?</i> <i>Can I try it on?</i> p. 77
11 Life's an adventure! page 78	going to <i>I'm going to be a soccer player.</i> p. 78 Comparatives and superlatives <i>The country is cheaper than the city.</i> p. 80 <i>Bati Island is the most expensive resort.</i> p. 81	The weather <i>sunny, cloudy</i> <i>What's the weather like?</i> p. 84	Making suggestions <i>What should we do?</i> <i>Let's go swimming!</i> p. 85
12 Have you ever? page 86	Present Perfect <i>ever and never</i> <i>Have you ever been to Barcelona?</i> <i>She's never been to Paris.</i> p. 86 <i>yet and just</i> <i>We haven't been there yet.</i> <i>They just went on a boat ride.</i> p. 88 Present Perfect and Past Simple <i>Maria's been to Seoul.</i> <i>She went there two years ago.</i> p. 87	Past participles <i>eaten, made, cooked</i> p. 87 City and country words <i>woods, museum</i> p. 92	At the airport <i>check in your luggage</i> <i>go to gate 4</i> p. 93

Stop and check 3 Teacher's Book p. 131

Audio Scripts p. 104

Grammar Reference p. 113

Pairwork Activities Student A p. 123 Student B p. 125

SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

READING

Two famous firsts – Amelia Earhart and Yuri Gagarin p. 52

SPEAKING

The year I was born p. 50
When did it happen? p. 51

LISTENING

1989 – the year I was born p. 50
Where are the people? p. 54

WRITING

Describing a vacation p. 98

Three inventions p. 58

Getting information – Famous inventions p. 56
Did you know that? p. 58
How did you two meet? p. 60

Three inventions p. 58
How did you two meet? p. 60

Writing about a friend
Linking words *because, when, until* p. 99

Food around the world p. 66

Food you like p. 62
Role play – shopping p. 65
Meals in your country p. 66

My favorite national food p. 68

Filling out forms
Booking a hotel p. 100

“Flying Without Wings” (song lyrics) p. 74

Describing a person/scene p. 71
Getting information – Who’s at the wedding? p. 72
My favorite things p. 75

Who’s at the wedding? p. 72
A song—“Flying Without Wings” p. 74

Describing people
Linking words *although, but* p. 101

Born free p. 82

Dangerous sports p. 82
Interviews p. 82
World weather p. 84

Future plans p. 78

Writing a postcard p. 102

We’ve never learned to drive! p. 90

Cities you have been to p. 87
Things you have done p. 88

What has Ryan done? p. 88
A honeymoon in Venice p. 88

Writing an e-mail
Saying thank you p. 103

Word List p. 127

Irregular Verbs and Verb Patterns p. 133

Phonetic Symbols p. 134

1

Hello everybody!

🎧 **Grammar:** *am/is/are* • *my/your/his/her*

🎧 **Vocabulary:** Countries • Everyday objects • Numbers

Everyday English: Hello and good-bye

STARTER 1 Say your names.

I'm Ali.

I'm Tomas.

2 Stand up in alphabetical order and say your names.

I'm Ali.

I'm Brenda.

I'm Tomas.

I'm Zack.

INTRODUCTIONS

am/is/are, my/your

1 **CD1** 2 Read and listen.

A Hello. My name's Miguel.

What's your name?

B Emma.

A Where are you from, Emma?

B I'm from Toronto, Canada.

CD1 2 Listen and repeat.

GRAMMAR SPOT

name's = name is

what's = what is

I'm = I am



2 Write the conversation.

A Hello. My _____ Lisa. What's _____ name?

B Mike.

A _____ are you from, Mike?

B _____ from Boston. Where _____ you from?

A _____ Boston, too!

CDI 3 Listen and check.

3 Stand up! Talk to the students in the class.

Hello! My name's _____.
What's your name?

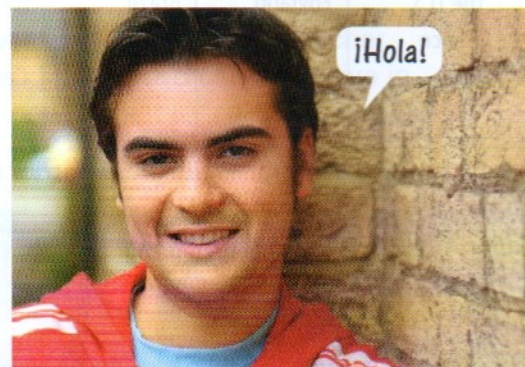
Maria.

Where are you from, Maria?

I'm from _____.

4 Where are the people from? Write the countries from the box.

the U.S. Canada Mexico



1. This is Miguel.
He's from _____.



2. This is Emma.
She's from _____.



3. This is Lisa and Mike.
They're from _____.

CDI 4 Listen and repeat.

GRAMMAR SPOT

he's = he is
she's = she is
they're = they are

Countries, *his/her*

5 **CDI 5** Listen and repeat.

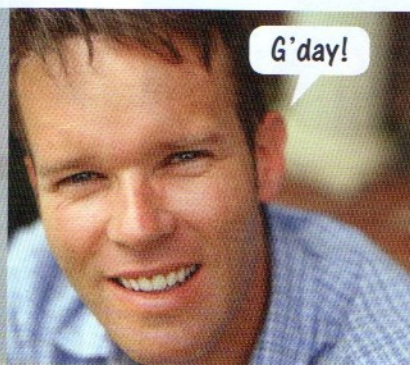
	• •	• •	• • •	• • •
the U.S. France Spain	England China Russia	Brazil Japan	Italy Mexico Canada	Australia Korea

6 Where are they from? Write the countries from Exercise 5.



This is So-young.

1. She's from Korea.



This is Jason.

2. He's _____



This is Akiko and Miho.

3. They're _____



This is Rosa.

4. _____



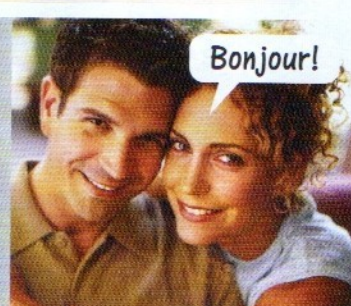
This is Tiago.

5. _____



This is Svetlana.

6. _____



This is Luc and Dominique.

7. _____



This is Kai.

8. _____



This is Pietro and Francesco.

9. _____

7 Ask and answer questions about the people. Use *she/her* and *he/his*.

What's her name?

So-young.

Where's she from?

Korea

What's his name?

Jason.

Where's he from?

Australia.

GRAMMAR SPOT

Complete the chart with *am*, *is*, and *are*.

I	_____	from Canada.
He She It	_____	
We You They	_____	

▶▶ Grammar Reference 1.1 and 1.2 p. 113

PRACTICE

Talking about you

- 1 Ask and answer questions with a partner about the students in your class.

What's his name?

Where's he from?

- 2 Introduce your partner to the class.

This is So-young. She's from Seoul, Korea.

Listening and pronunciation

- 3 **CDI 6** Listen and put a check (✓) next to the sentence you hear.

- ☐ She's from Vietnam.
☐ He's from Vietnam.
- ☐ What's her name?
☐ What's his name?
- ☐ They're from Japan.
☐ They're in Japan.
- ☐ Where's she from?
☐ Where's he from?
- ☐ He's a teacher in Chile.
☐ His teacher's in Chile.

Check it

- 4 Complete the sentences with *am*, *is*, *are*, *his*, *her*, or *your*.
- My name is Emma.
 - Where are you from?
 - I am from Mexico.
 - "What's her name?" "My name's Daniela."
 - Lisa and Mike are from Boston.
 - This is my teacher. His name's Richard.
 - Where is he from?
 - This is my sister. Her name's Miho.

Reading and writing

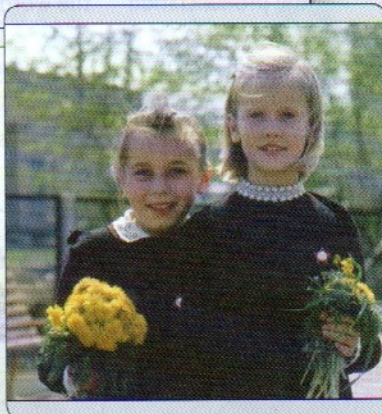
- 5 **CDI 7** Listen and read about Svetlana.



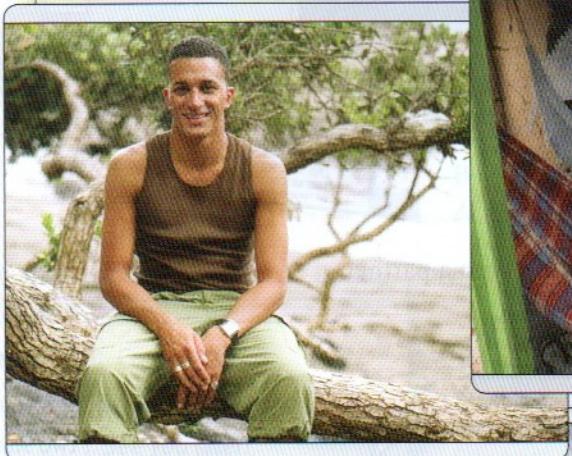
Svetlana

Posted: August 30; 4:21

My name's Svetlana Mariskova and I'm a teacher. I'm 30. I'm married and I have two children. I live in an apartment in Moscow. I want to learn English for my job.



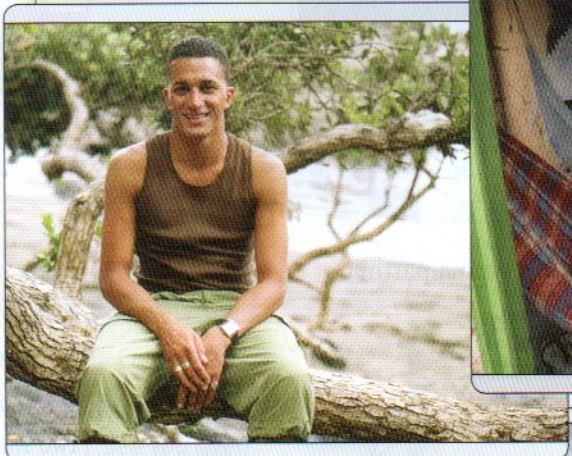
- 6 Complete the text about Tiago.



Tiago

Posted: October 2; 9:07

My name's Tiago Costa and I'm a student. I am 18. I'm not married. I have one sister and two brothers. I live in a house in Fortaleza, Brazil. I want to learn English because it's an international language.



- CDI 8** Listen and check.

- 7 Write about *you*. Then read it to the class.

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Everyday objects

- 1 **CDI 9** Listen to the alphabet song. Say the alphabet as a class.

abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz

- 2 Look at this extract from an English/Spanish dictionary.

the pronunciation	the word in Spanish
apple /'æpl/ n.	manzana
the word in English	the part of speech (n. = noun)

- 3 Match the words and pictures.

	● ●	● ● ●	● ● ● ●
a stamp	an apple	a magazine	a dictionary
a bag	an orange	a newspaper	
a key	a camera		
a watch	a ticket		
	a postcard		
	a cell phone		

- CDI 10** Listen and repeat.



- 4 Ask and answer questions with a partner.

What's a?

It's an apple.

How do you spell that?

A-P-P-...

- 5 Look at the words. When is it *a*? When is it *an*?

a bag a ticket a cell phone
an apple an orange an English dictionary

- 6 Look at the plural words.

two stamps two apples two dictionaries

Say the plurals of the other words in Exercise 3.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 1.4 and 1.5 p. 113

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Hello and good-bye

- 1 Say the numbers 1–20 around the class.
- 2 **CD1 11** Read and listen to the telephone numbers. Read them aloud.

726-6390	seven two six six three nine zero
919-677-1303	nine one nine six seven seven one three zero three
1-800-445-9714	one eight hundred four four five nine seven one four

- 3 **CD1 12** Listen and write the numbers you hear. Practice them.
- 4 Ask and answer the question with other students. Write a list.

What's your phone number?

My cell phone is (212) 726-6389.

My home number is (201) 305-5753.

Thank you very much.

- 5 **CD1 13** Listen to the conversations. Write them in the correct order.



1. ☐ I'm fine, thank you. And you?
☐ I'm OK, thanks.
☐ Hello, Lisa. It's Mike.
☐ Mike! How are you?
☐ Hello. Lisa Jefferson.

A _____
 B _____
 A _____
 B _____
 A _____



2. ☐ Thanks, Miguel. See you later!
☐ Is 7:00 OK with you, Emma?
☐ Great! Have a nice day!
☐ Yes. 7:00 is fine.

A _____
 B _____
 A _____
 B _____



3. ☐ Not bad, thanks. And you?
☐ Just fine, thanks. How are the children?
☐ Hi, Anna! It's me, Charles. How are you?
☐ They're fine.
☐ Hello?

A _____
 B _____
 A _____
 B _____
 A _____

- CD1 13** Listen again and check.

Music of English

- CD1 14** In English we stress important words. Listen and repeat. Copy the stress.

How are you?

I'm OK, thanks.

Have a nice day!

Not bad, thanks. And you?

See you later!

Just fine, thanks.

- 6 Practice the conversations with other students. Then practice again using *your* name and number.

2

Meeting people

Grammar: *am/is/are*—questions and negatives • Possessive 's

Vocabulary: Family • Opposites
Everyday English: In a cafe

- STARTER**
- Count from 1–20 around the class.
 - Count in 10s from 10–100 around the class.
 - How old are you? Ask and answer in groups.

Ten

Twenty

Thirty

...

One hundred.

How old are you?

I'm nineteen.

WHO IS SHE?

Questions and negatives

- 1 Read the information about Lisa Jefferson.

Last name	Jefferson
First name	Lisa
Country	The United States
Job	Journalist
Address	89 Franklin Street Boston, Massachusetts
Phone number	(617) 326-1204
Age	26
Married	No

- 2 Complete the questions.

- What's her last name? Jefferson.
- her first name? Lisa.
- she from? The United States.
- job? She's a journalist.
- What's ? 89 Franklin Street, Boston, Massachusetts.
- phone number? (617) 326-1204.
- How old ? Twenty-six.
- Is she ? No, she isn't.

CD1 15 Listen and check.
Practice the questions and answers.

3 Lisa has a brother. Write questions about him.

CD1 16 Listen and complete the information.

What's his last name?

Jefferson.

What's his first name?

Last name	Jefferson
First name	
Country	
Job	
Address	
Phone number	
Age	
Married	



PRACTICE

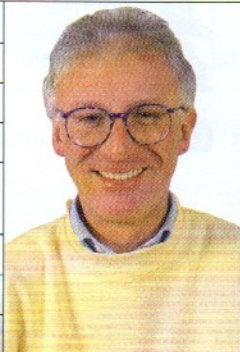
Who is he?

1 Student A Look at this information.

Student B Look at the information on page 125.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

Last name	Binchey
First name	
Country	Ireland
Job	
Address	82 Hill Road Dublin
Phone number	
Age	48
Married	




2 Ask and answer Yes/No questions about Patrick.

1. Smith? Jefferson? Binchey?
2. from the United States? from Canada? from Ireland?
3. an actor? a teacher? an accountant?

Talking about you

3 Ask your teacher some questions.

What's your first name?

Isabel.

Are you married?

No, I'm not.

What ...

4 Ask two students questions to complete the form.

	Student 1	Student 2
Name		
Country/town		
Job		
Address		
Phone number		
Age		
Married		

Tell the class about one of the students.

Negatives and short answers

4 **CD1 17** Read and listen. Then listen and repeat.

Is she Canadian? No, she isn't.

Is she English? No, she isn't.

Is she American? Yes, she is.

Ask and answer Yes/No questions about Lisa.

1. a student? a teacher? a journalist?
2. eighteen? twenty-one? twenty-six?

5 Ask and answer questions about Lisa's brother.

1. Peter? Daniel? Rudi?
2. a journalist? a student? an actor?
3. sixteen? thirty? twenty-eight?

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the answers to the Yes/No questions.

Is Lisa American? Yes, she _____.

Is her last name Smith? No, it _____.

Are you a journalist? No, I'm _____.

2 Look at the negatives.

She **isn't** married. You **aren't** English.

But: I'm **not** a teacher. ~~X I amn't~~ a teacher.

►► Grammar Reference 2.1 p. 114

PATRICK'S FAMILY

Possessive 's

1 Write the words in the correct place.

brother father daughter wife aunt grandmother girlfriend

	boyfriend	husband		son		uncle	grandfather
	girlfriend		mother		sister		

2 **CD1 18** Read about Patrick Bincey and listen. Write the people's names in the correct place.

This is a photo of Patrick, his wife, and his children. His wife's name is Bonnie. She's a teacher. His daughter's name is Laura. She's twenty-one and she's a nurse. His son's name is Brian. He's nineteen and he's a student. Laura's husband's name is Mike. He's a nurse, too.



3 Ask and answer questions about Patrick's family.

Who's Bonnie?

She's Patrick's wife.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Look at 's.

She's a teacher: She's = She is.

His wife's name: His wife's name = her name
's = possession

2 Find other examples in the text of 's = possession and 's = is.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 2.2 p. 114

PRACTICE

You and your family

- 1 Ask your teacher questions about the people in his/her family.

What's your mother's name?

What's your sister's name?

- 2 Write the names of people in your family. Ask and answer questions with a partner.

Santiago Hilda Inés Raúl Gabriela

Ask a partner questions about his/her family.

Who's Santiago?

He's my brother.

Who's Hilda?

She's my aunt. She's my mother's sister.

- 3 Make true sentences with the verb *to be*.

1. I am not at home.
2. We _____ in class.
3. It _____ Monday today.
4. My teacher's name _____ John.
5. My mother and father _____ at work.
6. I _____ married.
7. My grandmother _____ seventy-five years old.
8. Daniel and Carlos _____ my brothers.
9. We _____ in the cafe. We _____ in the classroom.

Check it

- 4 Put a check (✓) next to the correct sentence.

1. ☐ I'm a doctor.
☐ I'm doctor.
2. ☐ I have twenty-nine years old.
☐ I am twenty-nine years old.
3. ☐ I no married.
☐ I'm not married.
4. ☐ My sister's name is Michelle.
☐ My sisters name is Michelle.
5. ☐ She married.
☐ She's married.
6. ☐ I'm an uncle.
☐ I'm a uncle.
7. ☐ I have two brother.
☐ I have two brothers.
8. ☐ Peter's the son of my sister.
☐ Peter's my sister's son.



VOCABULARY

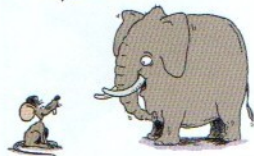
Opposites

1 Match the adjectives with their opposites.

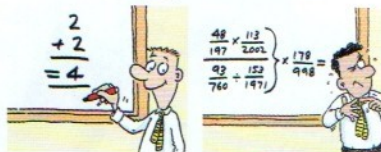
big	awful
old	old
new	small
nice	difficult
easy	cheap
hot	cold
expensive	slow
fast	young

2 Write about the pictures, using the adjectives.

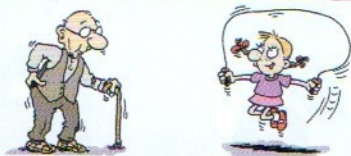
1. It's small.
It's big.



2. It's
It's



3. He's
She's



4. They're
They're



5. It's
It's



6. It's
It's



7. They're
They're



8. It's
It's



CD1 19 Listen and check. Practice saying the sentences.

READING AND LISTENING

An e-mail from the U.S.

1 **CD1 20** So-young is a student at an English language school in New York City. Read and listen to her e-mail to Jae-sun, her brother in Korea.



2 Match photographs 1-4 with a part of the e-mail.

3 Correct the false (X) sentences.

1. So-young is from Korea. ✓
2. She's on vacation. X *No, she isn't. She's at school.*
3. She's in Boston.
4. The students in her class are all from Brazil.
5. It's a very big class.
6. Becky and James are both students.
7. The subway is very expensive.
8. So-young's happy in New York.

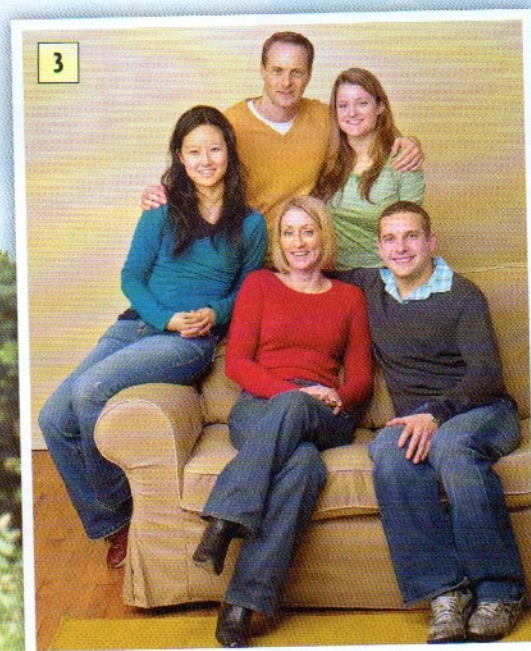
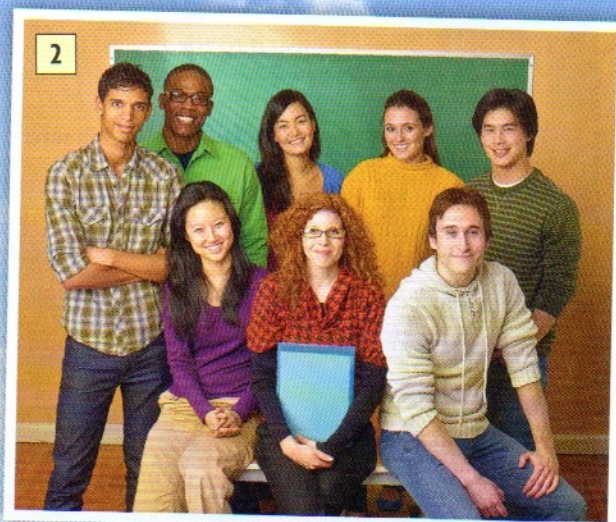
4 Write the questions about So-young's e-mail.

1. Where's So-young from? Korea.
2. _____? India, Brazil, Italy, China, Mexico, and Russia.
3. _____? Karen.
4. _____? They are brother and sister. They live with So-young.
5. _____? James is 25 and Becky's 19.
6. _____ New York _____? No, it isn't.

5 **CD1 21** Listen to three conversations. Where is So-young? Who is she with?

Writing

6 Write an e-mail about your class.



To: Jae-sun@star.com
 From: So-young@nyc.ac.edu
 Date: August 20
 Subject: Hi!

Dear Jae-sun,

How are you? I'm fine. Here's an e-mail in English. It's good practice for you and me!

I have classes at La Guardia Community College. I'm in a class with seven students. They're all from different countries: India, Brazil, Italy, China, Mexico, and Russia. Our teacher's name's Karen. She's very nice and a very good teacher.

I live with an American family in a large apartment in Brooklyn. Bob and Julie have a daughter and a son. Their daughter, Becky, is 19. She's a student at Columbia University. Their son, James, is a software designer for a computer company. He's 25. They're all very friendly, but it isn't easy to understand them. They speak very fast!

New York is big and very exciting, but very expensive! The subway isn't hard to use and it's cheap. It's very hot now, but Central Park is beautiful in the summer. I'm very happy here.

E-mail me soon!

Love,
So-young

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

In a cafe

1. **CD1 22** Read and listen to the prices. Read them aloud.

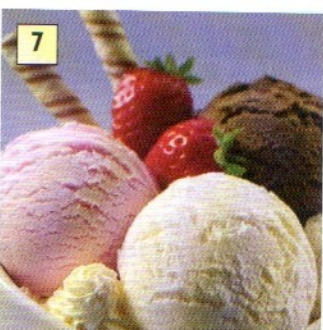
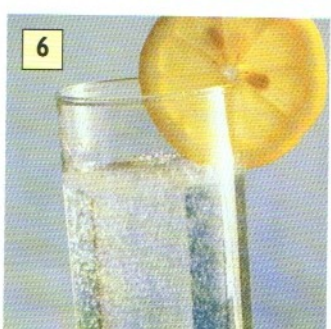
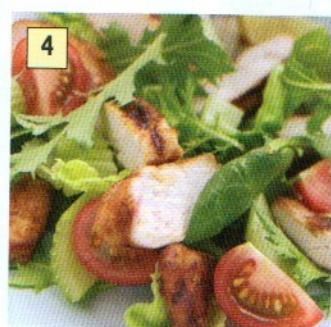
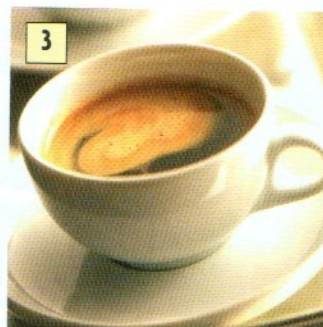
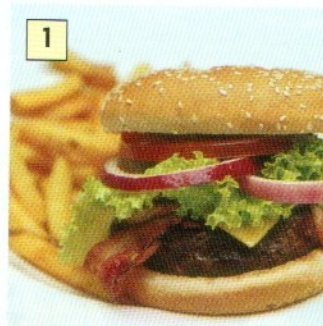
\$1.00 one dollar/a dollar
 \$10.75 ten dollars and seventy-five cents/ten seventy-five
 \$5.00 five dollars
 \$7.50 seven dollars and fifty cents/seven-fifty
 50¢ fifty cents

2. **CD1 23** Write the prices you hear. Practice saying them.
 2 Read the menu. Match the food and pictures.

Central Park Cafe

Menu

Grilled chicken salad	\$6.50
Tuna salad sandwich	\$6.25
Hot dog and fries	\$5.25
Hamburger and fries	\$5.95
Pizza	\$4.75
Chocolate cake Apple pie Ice cream \$3.50 \$3.25 \$3.00	
Coffee	\$1.50
Tea	\$1.25
Mineral water	\$1.00
Orange juice	\$2.00



- 3 **CD1 24** Listen and repeat. Then ask and answer questions with a partner.

How much is a hamburger and fries?

Five dollars and ninety-five cents.

How much is a hamburger and fries and an orange juice?

Seven ninety-five.

4 **CD1 25** Listen and complete the conversations in the cafes.



1. A Good morning.
B Good _____. Can I have a _____, please?
A Sure. Anything else?
B No, thanks.
A _____, please.
B Thanks.
A Thank you.



2. A Hi. Can I help you?
B Yes. Can I have a _____ sandwich, please?
A Anything to drink?
B Yeah. A _____, please.
A OK. Here you are.
B _____ is that?
A _____, please.
B OK. Thanks.

Music of English 🎵

CD1 26 Words often link. Listen and practice the rhythm.

Can I help you?

A cup of coffee, please.

Anything else?

Here you are.

How much is that?

5 Practice the conversations with your partner. Make more conversations.

www.irlanguage.com

IR
Language
مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان

3

The world of work

Grammar: Present Simple 1 – *he/she/it* • Questions and negatives

Vocabulary: Jobs

Everyday English: What time is it?

STARTER What are the jobs of the people in your family? Tell the class.

My father is a doctor.

My mother is a ...

My brother ...

THREE JOBS

Present Simple *he/she/it*

- 1 **CD1 27** Listen and read about István and Pamela.
What's his job? What's her job?

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Underline all the verbs in the texts.
is comes
- 2 What is the last letter of these verbs?

Pronunciation

- 3 Is -s pronounced /s/ or /z/?

CD1 28 Listen and write the verbs.

/s/	/z/
works	is
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Practice saying them.

István Kis

István is a music professor. He comes from Budapest in Hungary, but now he lives in the United States. He works four days a week at the University of Texas, Austin. He speaks three languages: Hungarian, English, and German. He's married to an American and has a daughter. He likes playing tennis in his free time.



- 2 Read the texts aloud.

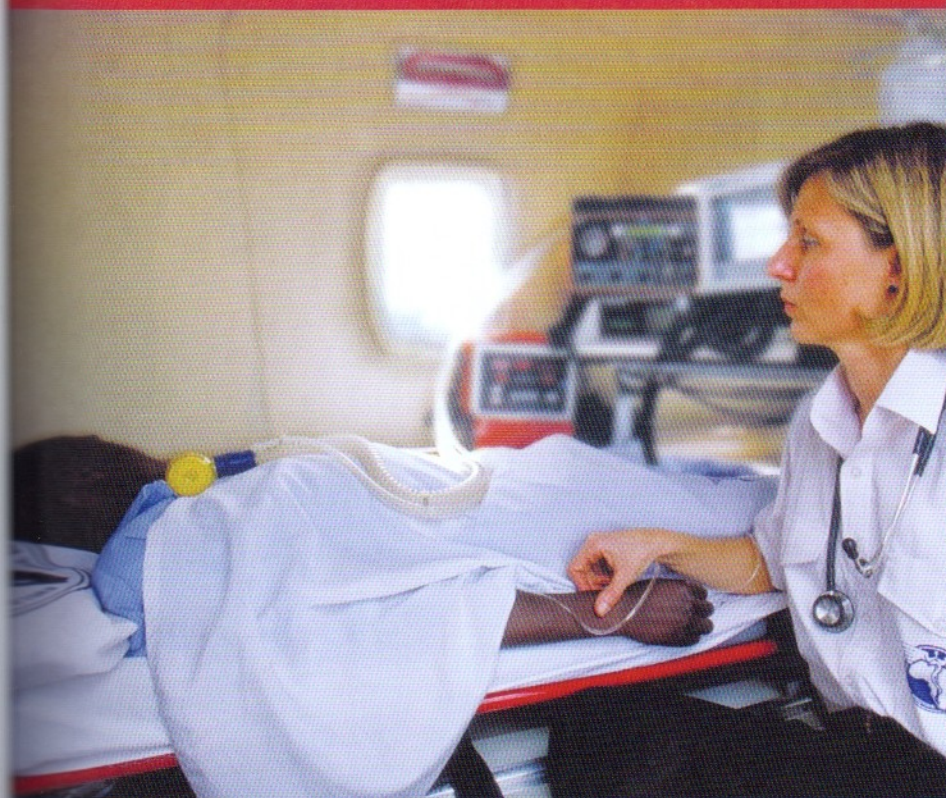
3 Complete the sentences about István and Pamela.

1. István's a music professor. Pamela's _____ a _____ doctor.
2. He comes from Hungary. She _____ Canada.
3. He lives in a big city, but she _____ in a _____ town.
4. He _____ four days _____ week. She _____ 16 hours a day _____.
5. He _____ three languages. She _____ to sick people on her radio.
6. He loves his job and she _____, too.
7. He _____ daughter. She _____ married.
8. He _____ playing tennis in his free time. She never _____ free time.

CD1 29 Listen and check. Read the sentences aloud.

Pamela Green

Pamela is a doctor. She's Canadian, but now she lives in a small town near Nairobi, Kenya, in East Africa. She isn't an ordinary doctor—she's a flying doctor. Every day from 8 A.M. to 10 A.M. she speaks to people on her radio, then she flies to help them. She works 16 hours a day nonstop, but she loves her job. She isn't married. She has no free time.



PRACTICE

Talking about people

1 Read the information about Alejandro.

Alejandro Diaz



Job	Tour guide
Country	Peru
Town	Lima
Place of work	In a tourist office
Languages	Spanish, English, and a little German
Married	No
Family	His roommate
Free time	Walking his dog, playing soccer

2 Talk about Alejandro.

Alejandro's a tour guide.

He comes from ... and he ... Lima.

He works ...

He speaks ...

He isn't ...

He has a ...

He likes ...

3 Write about a friend or a relative. Talk to a partner about him/her.

My friend Anna is a student. She lives in ...

WHAT DOES HE DO?

Questions and negatives

- 1 **CD1 30** Read and listen. Complete the answers. Practice the questions and answers.

- Where **does** István **come** from?
Budapest, _____ Hungary.
- What **does** he **do**?
He's _____ music professor.
- Does** he **speak** German?
_____, he does.
- Does** he **speak** Spanish?
_____, he doesn't. He doesn't speak Spanish or French.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- What does he/she do? = What's his/her job?
- Complete these sentences with the correct form of *come*.

Affirmative He _____ from Hungary.

Negative He _____ from Poland.

Question Where _____ he _____ from?

Pronunciation

- 3 **CD1 31** Listen. Notice the pronunciation of *does* and *doesn't*.

/dəz/

Does he speak German?

/dəz/

/'dʌznt/

Yes, he **does**./No, he **doesn't**.

Practice saying the question and short answers.

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 3.1 p. 114**

- 2 Complete the questions and answers.

- Where _____ Pamela _____ from?
Canada.
- What _____ she _____?
She's a doctor.
- _____ she live in Canada?
No, she _____.
- _____ she _____ her job?
Yes, she _____.

CD1 32 Listen, check, and practice.

- 3 Write similar questions about Alejandro the tour guide. Ask and answer with a partner.

Where does Alejandro come from?

Peru.

PRACTICE

Asking about people

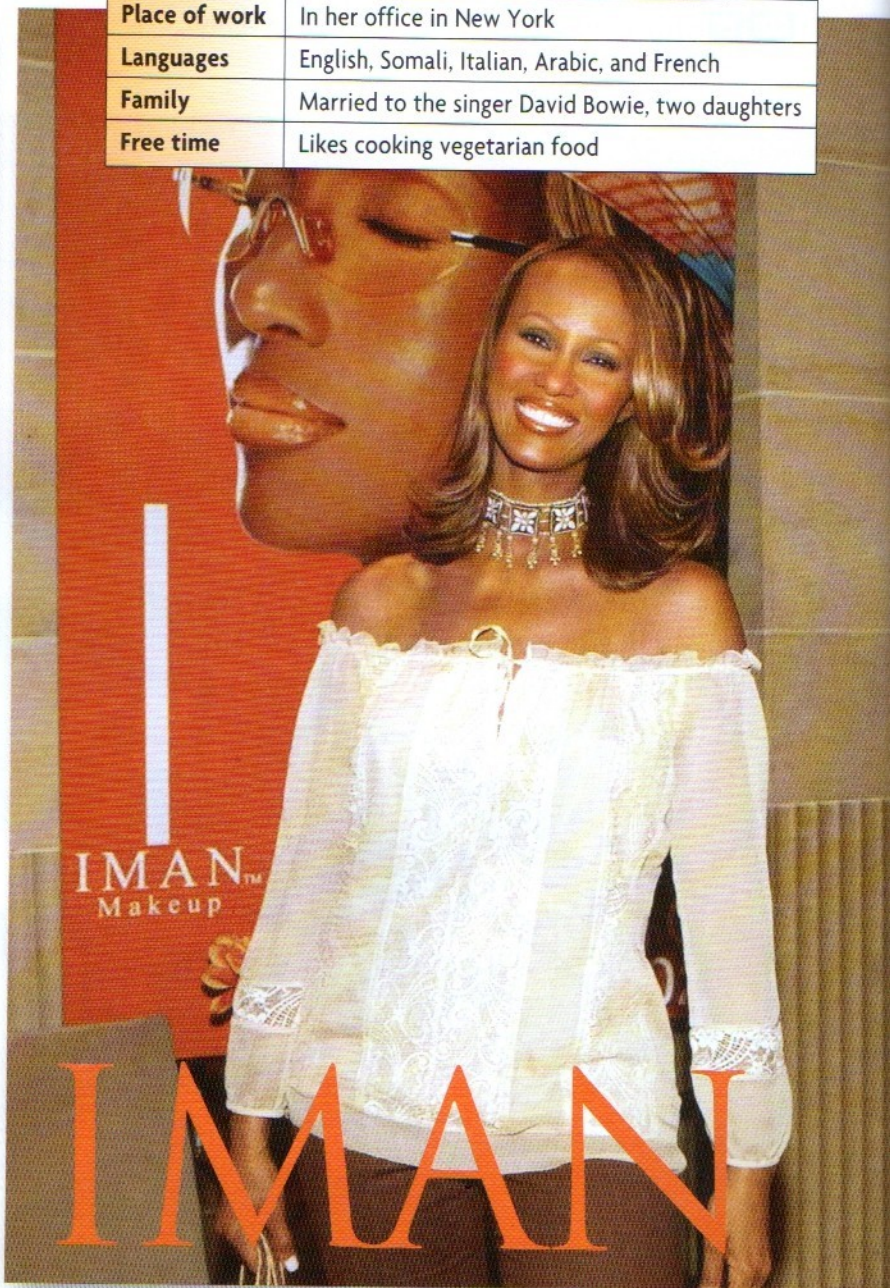
- Read the information about Iman or Giorgio.
- Talk to a partner.

Iman's a model and businesswoman.

She comes from Somalia.

She lives ...

	Iman
Job	Model and businesswoman
Country	Somalia
Town	New York
Place of work	In her office in New York
Languages	English, Somali, Italian, Arabic, and French
Family	Married to the singer David Bowie, two daughters
Free time	Likes cooking vegetarian food



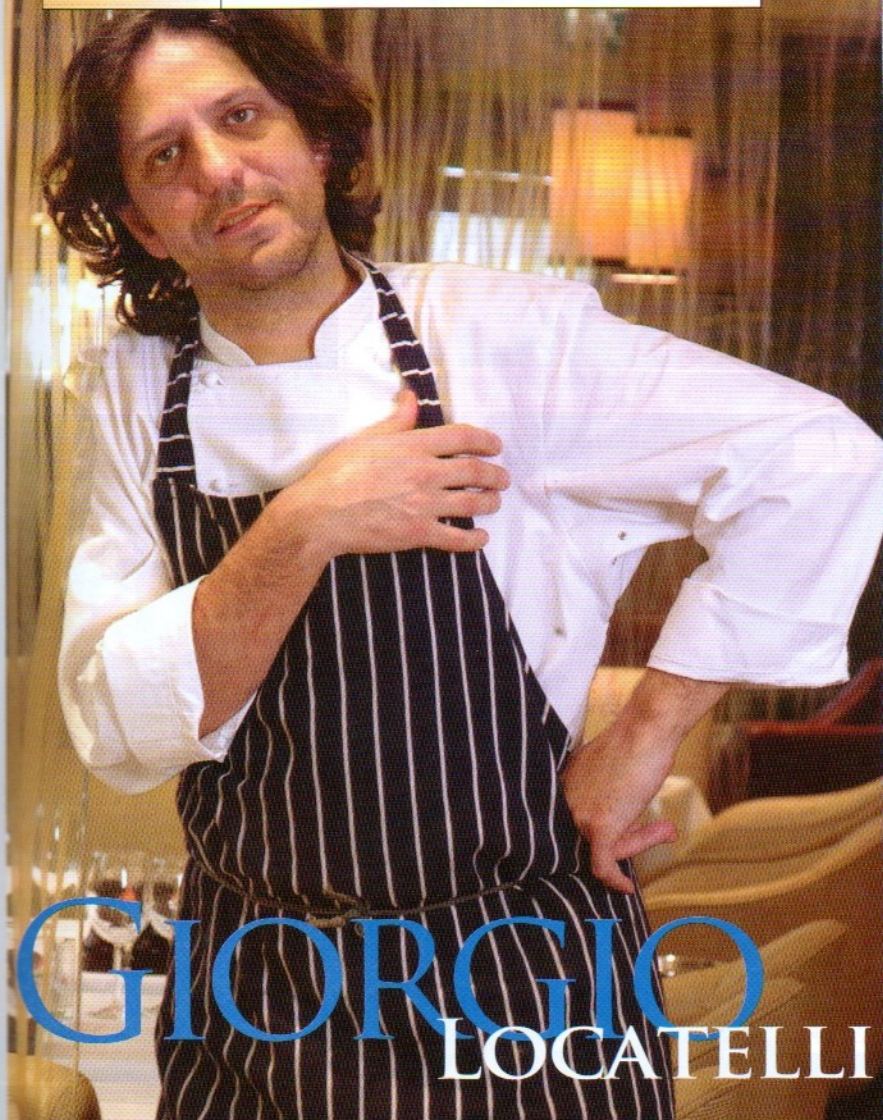
3 Write questions about Iman or Giorgio.

- What/do? *What does Iman do?*
- Where/come from?
- Where/live?
- Where/work?
- ... speak French? *Does she/he ...*
- How many children ...?
- ... a dog?
- What ... in her/his free time?
- ... like cooking?

4 Ask and answer questions with your partner.

5 Now ask your partner the same questions about a friend or relative.

Giorgio Locatelli	
Job	Chef
Country	Italy
Town	London
Place of work	In his restaurant in London
Languages	Italian, English, and French
Family	Married, a son and a daughter
Free time	Likes walking his dog, riding, relaxing with his family



Listening and pronunciation

6 **CD1 33** Listen to the sentences about Iman and Giorgio. Correct the wrong sentences.

Iman comes from Somalia.

Yes, that's right.

Iman lives and works in Somalia.

No, she doesn't. She lives and works in New York.

7 **CD1 34** Put a check (✓) next to the sentences you hear.

1. ☐ He likes his job.
☐ She likes her job.
2. ☐ She loves walking.
☐ She loves working.
3. ☐ He's married.
☐ He isn't married.
4. ☐ Does she have three children?
☐ Does he have three children?
5. ☐ What does he do?
☐ Where does he go?

Check it

8 Put a check (✓) next to the correct sentence.

1. ☐ She comes from Somalia.
☐ She come from Somalia.
2. ☐ What he do in his free time?
☐ What does he do in his free time?
3. ☐ Where lives she?
☐ Where does she live?
4. ☐ He isn't married.
☐ He doesn't married.
5. ☐ Does she has two sons?
☐ Does she have two sons?
6. ☐ He doesn't play soccer.
☐ He no plays soccer.
7. ☐ She doesn't love Peter.
☐ She doesn't loves Peter.
8. ☐ What's he's address?
☐ What's his address?

► **WRITING** Natural writing p. 94

READING AND LISTENING

Seamus McSporran – the man with twelve jobs!

- 1 Seamus McSporran /'seɪməs mək'spɒrən/ comes from Scotland. Look at the photographs of some of the things he does every day.



The man with twelve jobs!



- 2 Match a sentence with a photograph.

1. He **helps** in the shop.
2. He **makes** breakfast for the hotel guests.
3. He **pumps** gas.
4. He **gets** the mail from the boat.
5. He **drives** the children to school.
6. He **delivers** the mail.
7. He **has** a mug of tea.
8. He **works** as an undertaker.





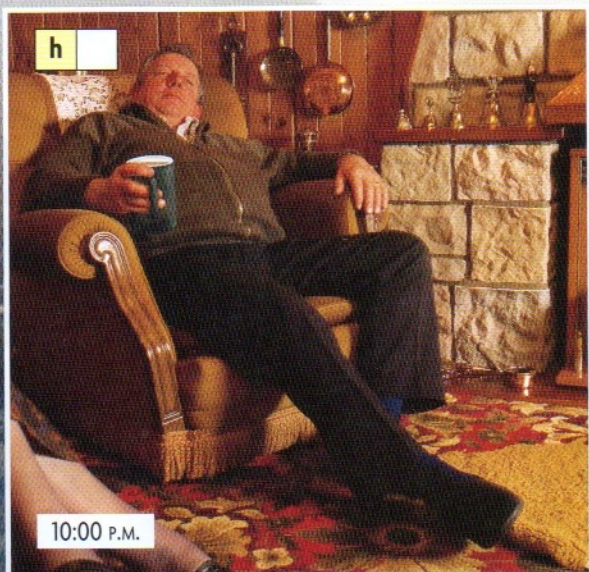
Seamus McSporran

is a very busy man. He is 60 years old and he has twelve jobs. He is a mail carrier, a police officer, a fire fighter, a taxi driver, a school-bus driver, a boatman, an ambulance driver, an accountant, a gas station attendant, and an undertaker. Also, he and his wife, Margaret, have a store and a small hotel.

Seamus lives and works on the island of Gigha /'gijə/ in the west of Scotland. Only 120 people live on the island in the winter, but in the summer 150 tourists come by boat every day.

Every weekday Seamus gets up at 6:00 and makes breakfast for the hotel guests. At 8:00 he drives the island's children to school. At 9:00 he gets the mail from the boat and delivers it to all the houses on the island. He also works at the island's only gas station. Then he helps Margaret in the shop.

He says: "Margaret likes being busy, too. We never take vacations and we don't like watching television. In the evenings Margaret makes supper and I pay the bills. At 10:00 we have a mug of tea and then we go to bed. Perhaps our life isn't very exciting, but we like it."



3 Read about Seamus. Answer the questions.

1. Where does Seamus live?
2. How old is he?
3. How many jobs does he have?
4. What's his wife's name?
5. What does she do?
6. How many people live on the island of Gigha?
7. How many tourists visit Gigha in the summer?
8. What does Seamus do in the morning?
9. What do he and Margaret do in the evening?

4 Look at the photos. Ask and answer questions with a partner about times in Seamus's day.

What does he do at six o'clock?

He gets up and makes breakfast.

5 CDI 35 Listen to four conversations from Seamus's day. After each one answer these questions.

1. Is it morning, afternoon, or evening?
2. Who are the people? Where are they?
3. What is Seamus's job?

6 Complete the conversations.

1. A Good _____. Can I _____ two ice cream cones, please?
B Chocolate or vanilla?
A One chocolate, one vanilla please.
B That's _____. Anything _____?
A No, thank you.
2. A Only _____ letters for you this _____, Mrs. Craig.
B Thank you very much, Mr. McSporran. And _____'s Mrs. McSporran this _____?
A Oh, she's very well, thank you. She's _____ in the shop.
3. A A mug of _____ before bed, Dearie?
B Oh, yes please.
A _____ you are.
B Thank you, Dearie. I'm very _____ this _____.
4. A Hello, Mr. McSporran!
B Good _____, boys and girls. Hurry up, we're late.
A Can I sit here, Mr. McSporran?
C No, no, I _____ to sit there.
B Be quiet _____ of you, and SIT DOWN!

Practice the conversations with your partner.

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Jobs

- 1 Use your dictionary and match a picture with a job in column A.

A	B
a. A pilot	designs buildings.
b. A chef	wears beautiful clothes.
c. A nurse	looks after people in the hospital.
d. A lawyer	makes movies.
e. An actor	writes for a newspaper.
f. A journalist	cooks in a restaurant.
g. A model	sells things.
h. An architect	flies planes.
i. A sales assistant	helps people in court.



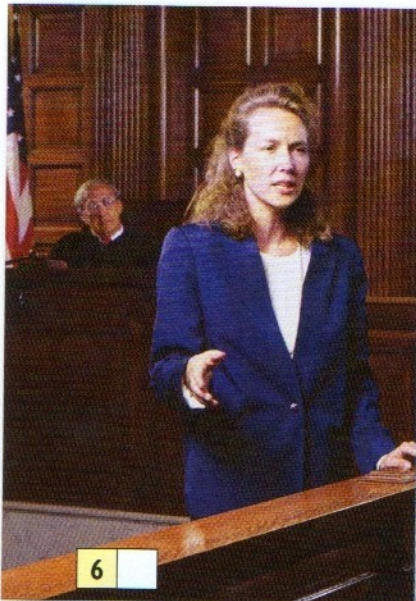
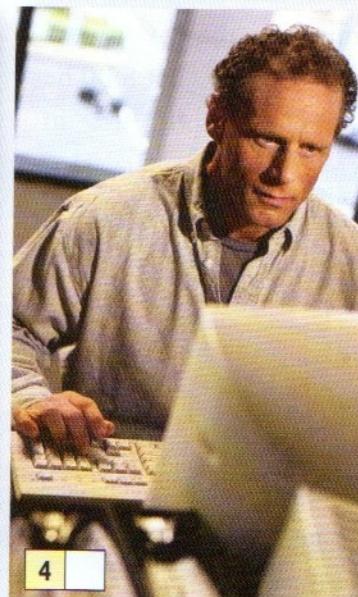
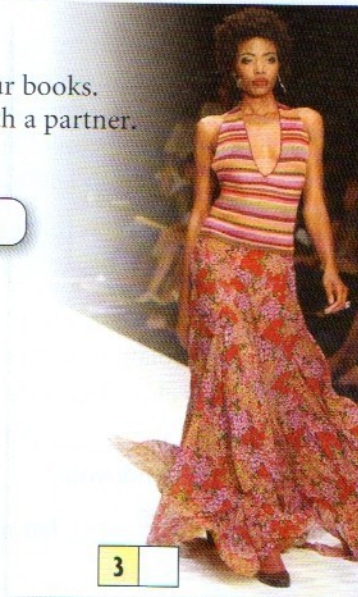
- 2 Match a job in A with a line in B.

CD1 36 Listen and check.

- 3 Memorize the jobs. Close your books.
Ask and answer questions with a partner.

What does a pilot do?

He/She flies planes.



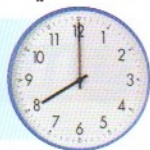
EVERYDAY ENGLISH

What time is it?

1 Look at the clocks. Write the times.



It's five o'clock.



1. _____



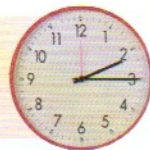
It's five-thirty.



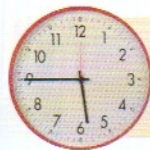
2. _____



It's a quarter after five.



3. _____



It's a quarter to six.



4. _____



It's five after five.



5. _____



It's twenty after five.



6. _____



It's twenty-five to six.



7. _____



It's ten to six.



8. _____

CD1 37 Listen and check. Practice saying the times.

2 Look at the times.



It's about three o'clock.



It's about five o'clock.

What time is it now? What time does the class end?

Music of English

CD1 38 In English the voice goes up and down. Copy the stress and intonation.

Conversation 1

Excuse me. Do you know what time it is?

Yes, of course. It's about six o'clock.

Thanks.

Conversation 2

Excuse me. Do you know what time it is?

I'm sorry, I don't know. I don't have a watch.

That's OK.

3 With a partner, draw clocks on a piece of paper. Make more conversations.

4 Take it easy!

🎧 **Grammar:** Present Simple 2-
I/you/we/they

🎧 **Vocabulary:** Leisure activities
Everyday English: Social expressions

- STARTER**
- 1 What year is it? What month is it? What day is it today?
 - 2 Say the days of the week. Which days are the weekend?

WEEKDAYS AND WEEKENDS

Present Simple I/you/we/they

- 1 **CD1 39** Listen and read about Lisa Parsons. What are her two jobs? What does she do on weekends?
- 2 Complete the text with the verbs.

goes	has (x2)	is (x2)	lives	practices
sings	stays	works	loves	doesn't relax

Lisa's busy days

Lisa Parsons _____ thirty-two years old and _____ in Manhattan. From Monday to Friday she _____ at a bookstore in New York. Sometimes she _____ at work until 10:30 at night, but Lisa _____ on weekends. On weekends she _____ another job—she _____ a singer. On Saturday afternoons she _____ with her band, and on Saturday and Sunday nights she _____ to nightclubs and _____. She _____ no free time, but she _____ her life!



Questions and negatives

- 3 **CD1 40** Close your books and listen to Lisa. Give examples of her busy life.

"I love my life!" says Lisa



"I love singing and I love books, so I'm very happy. My weekends are very exciting, but I _____ my weekdays too. I'm lucky, I _____ near the bookstore and I _____ work until 10:00 A.M. Every morning I _____ at 8:00, _____ breakfast, and _____ the news on TV. Then I _____ to work. I'm very busy all day. I _____ people find the books they _____. At lunchtime I _____ a sandwich from the deli and I often _____ to the gym. I usually _____ work at 5:30 P.M., but on Tuesday and Thursday evenings I _____ very late, until 10:30. I never _____ after work. I'm too tired. I sometimes _____ going to the little restaurant near my apartment. Saturday mornings, I _____ and _____ my apartment. I _____ dinner on Saturday and Sunday evenings because I'm too excited. I like singing, but I'm always nervous before the show."

- 4 Read and complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Look up new words in your dictionary.

clean cook enjoy finish get get up go shopping
go help like live love don't eat
walk want watch work make don't start

CD1 40 Listen again and check. Read the text aloud.

- 5 **CD1 41** Read and listen. Complete Lisa's answers. Practice the questions and answers with a partner.

Where do you work? _____ New York.

Do you like your job? Yes, I _____.

Do you relax on weekends? No, I _____.

Why don't you relax on weekends? _____ I sing in nightclubs.

Role play

- 6 Work with your partner. One of you is Lisa Parsons. Ask and answer questions about your life.

- Where ... you live/work?
- Why ... you enjoy your work?
- What time ... get up on weekdays?
- When ... start work? When ... finish work?
- ... drive to work?
- What ... you do at lunchtime?
- Why don't ... cook after work?
- What ... you do on Saturday mornings?/Saturday afternoons?
- What ... you do on Saturday and Sunday evenings?
- Why don't ... dinner before the show?
- Who ... sing with?
- ... like your busy life?

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Complete the chart for the Present Simple.

	Affirmative	Negative
I	work	don't work
You		
He/She		
It		
We		
They		

- 2 Complete the questions and answers.

Where _____ you work?

Where _____ she work?

_____ you work in New York? Yes, I _____.

_____ he work in New York? No, he _____.

- 3 Find the words in the text:

always usually often sometimes never

▶▶ Grammar Reference 4.1 and 4.2 p. 115

PRACTICE

Talking about you

1 Make questions. Then match the questions and answers.

Questions	Answers
1. What time	a. My mother and sisters.
2. Where	b. To Hawaii or Florida.
3. What	c. After dinner.
4. When	d. I always relax.
5. Who	e. At 11:00.
6. Why	f. Because it's interesting.
7. How	g. By bus.
8. Do	h. Yes, I do sometimes.

CD1 42 Listen and check.

2 Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Give true answers.

3 Tell the class about you and your partner.

Carmen goes to bed at 11:00. I go to bed at 10:00 on weekdays but at 11:30 on weekends.

I live with my parents and my grandmother. Carmen lives with her parents, too.

Listening and pronunciation

4 CD1 43 Put a check (✓) next to the sentence you hear.

- ☐ What does he do on Sundays?
☐ What does she do on Sundays?
- ☐ Do you stay at home on Tuesday evenings?
☐ Do you stay at home on Thursday evenings?
- ☐ He lives here.
☐ He leaves here.
- ☐ Where do you go on Saturday evenings?
☐ What do you do on Saturday evenings?
- ☐ I read a lot.
☐ I eat a lot.
- ☐ Why do you like your job?
☐ Why don't you like your job?

Affirmatives and negatives

5 Make the sentences opposite.

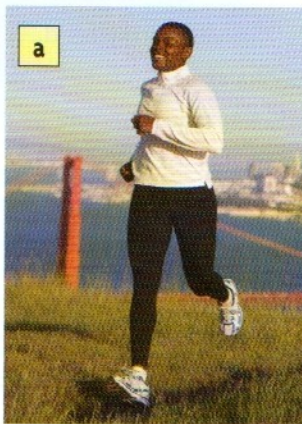
- She's Chinese. *She isn't Chinese.*
- I don't like cooking. *I like cooking.*
- She doesn't speak Spanish.
- They want to learn English.
- We're tired and want to go to bed.
- Roberto likes watching soccer on TV, but he doesn't like playing it.
- I work at home because I have a computer.
- Amelia isn't happy because she doesn't have a new car.

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Leisure activities

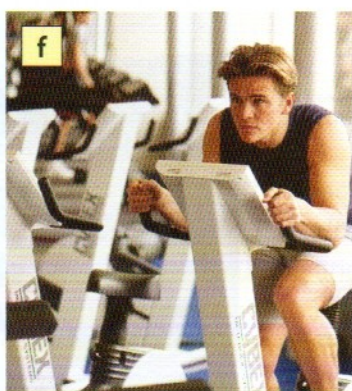
1 Match the words and photos.

- ☐ i playing soccer
- ☐ dancing
- ☐ skiing
- ☐ watching TV
- ☐ going to the gym
- ☐ taking photographs
- ☐ cooking
- ☐ playing computer games
- ☐ sailing
- ☐ listening to music
- ☐ swimming
- ☐ reading
- ☐ eating in restaurants
- ☐ going to the movies
- ☐ jogging
- ☐ sunbathing

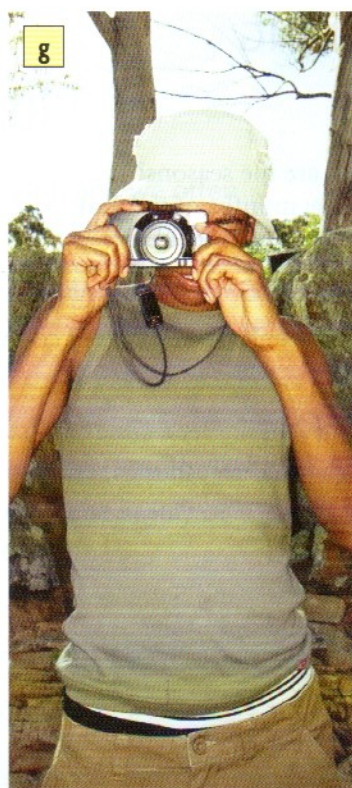




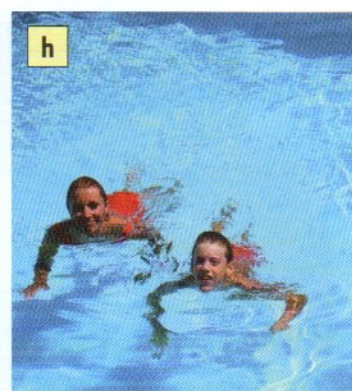
e



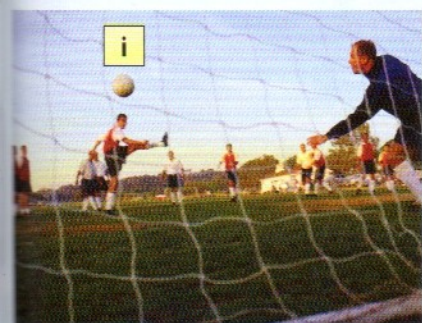
f



g



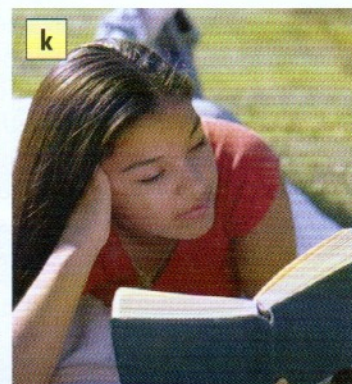
h



i



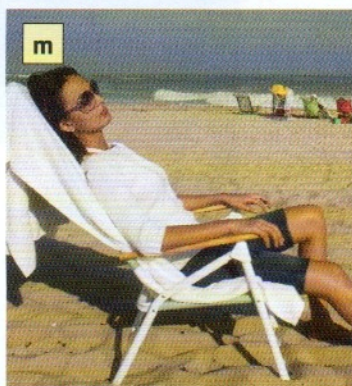
j



k



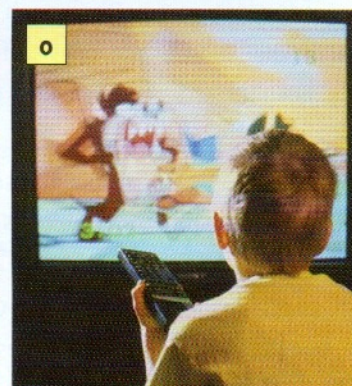
l



m



n



o



p



- 2 Discuss in groups what you think your teacher likes doing. Choose *five* activities.

I think he/she likes cooking.

No, I think he/she likes eating in restaurants.

Ask your teacher questions to find out who is correct.

Do you like cooking?

Do you like eating in restaurants?

- 3 Tell the other students what you *like* doing and what you *don't like* doing from the list. Ask questions about the activities.

I don't like watching TV, but I like reading very much.

Oh, really? What do you read?

Why don't you like watching TV?

- 4 Tell the other students things you like doing that are *not* on the list.

READING AND LISTENING

My favorite season

- 1 1. What season is it now? What are the seasons?
2. What month is it now? Say the months of the year.
3. When are the different seasons in your country?
- 2 Look at the photos. Which season is it? What colors do you see?
- 3 **CDI 44** Read and listen to three people from different countries.
- 4 Answer the questions.
 1. Which season do they like best?
 2. What sports do Daniela and Alex play?
 3. Where does Sumalee live?
 4. Does Daniela like sunbathing?
 5. Why does Alex like spring?
 6. Which special occasions do Daniela and Sumalee like?
 7. Why do Daniela's cousins never visit in July?
 8. Which months are winter months in the three countries?
- 5 There are six mistakes about Daniela, Sumalee, and Alex. Correct them.

Daniela goes to the beach a lot because she likes sunbathing. In the summer she goes surfing and waterskiing. Her cousins from the U.S. usually visit on New Year's Day.

Sumalee comes from the south of Thailand. Her favorite season is summer. She loves dancing.

Alex comes from Canada. Canadians don't like their cold winters. Alex likes winter best. He goes skiing and snowboarding.

- 6 **CDI 45** Listen to the conversations. Is it Daniela, Sumalee, or Alex? Where are they? How do you know? Discuss with a partner.

What do you think?

- What is *your* favorite season? Why?
- What do *you* do in the different seasons?

► WRITING Informal letters p. 95

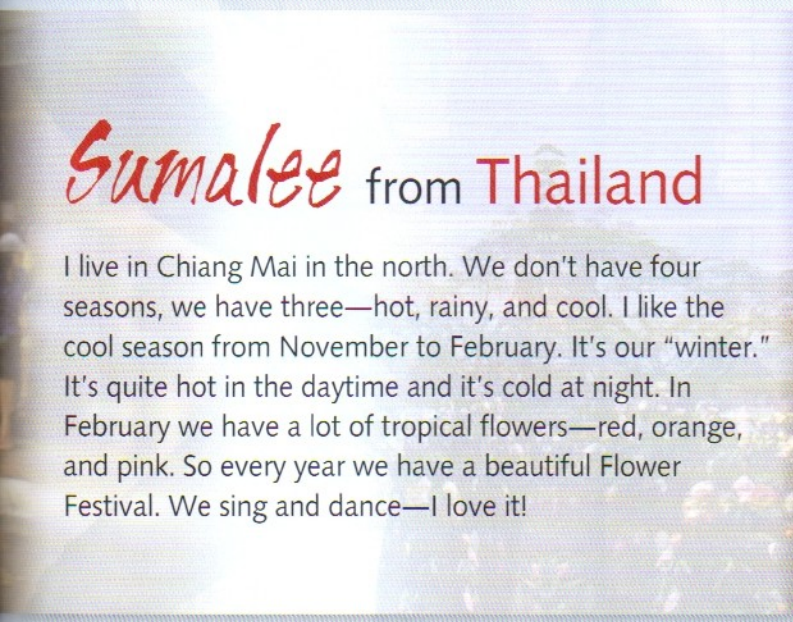




Daniela from Brazil

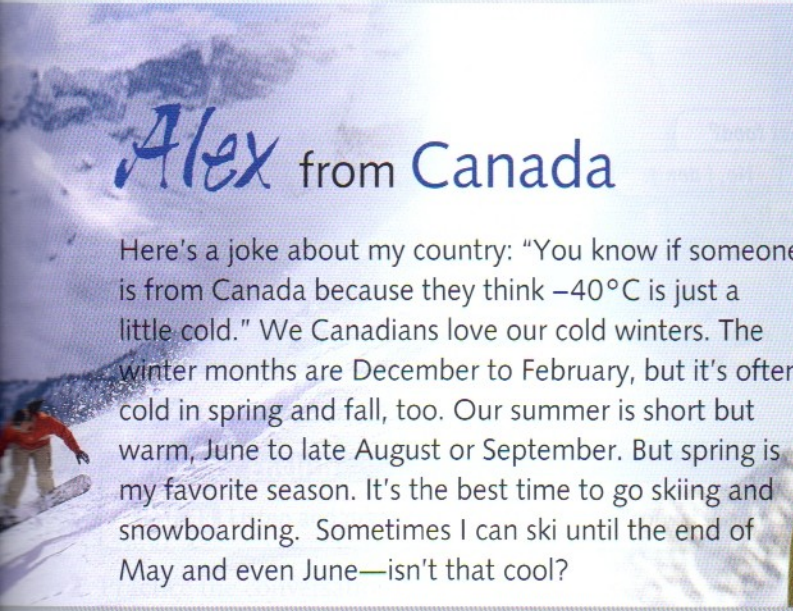
I like summer best. We go to the beach a lot, and we often have picnics and barbecues there. I don't like sunbathing, but I love water sports. I go surfing and waterskiing.

Summer here is from December to February. It's very hot, sometimes 40°C. New Year's Day, Ano Novo we call it, is special for us, we always go to the beach and have a big party. Then in February or March it's Carnival, that's best of all, a five-day party and no work. My cousins from the States usually visit for Carnival. They never come in July or August because it's cold and it sometimes rains.



Sumalee from Thailand

I live in Chiang Mai in the north. We don't have four seasons, we have three—hot, rainy, and cool. I like the cool season from November to February. It's our "winter." It's quite hot in the daytime and it's cold at night. In February we have a lot of tropical flowers—red, orange, and pink. So every year we have a beautiful Flower Festival. We sing and dance—I love it!



Alex from Canada

Here's a joke about my country: "You know if someone is from Canada because they think -40°C is just a little cold." We Canadians love our cold winters. The winter months are December to February, but it's often cold in spring and fall, too. Our summer is short but warm, June to late August or September. But spring is my favorite season. It's the best time to go skiing and snowboarding. Sometimes I can ski until the end of May and even June— isn't that cool?



SPEAKING

Do you have a healthy lifestyle?

- 1 Read and complete the questionnaire about you.
Write ✓ or X, then look at the answer key. Are you healthy?

Do **you** have a healthy lifestyle?

Do you ... ?	Me	T	S1	S2
A. have breakfast every morning	☐	☐	☐	☐
B. eat a lot of vegetables	☐	☐	☐	☐
C. drink a lot of water	☐	☐	☐	☐
D. walk to school/work	☐	☐	☐	☐
E. play a sport	☐	☐	☐	☐
F. stay up late	☐	☐	☐	☐
G. drink a lot of soda	☐	☐	☐	☐
H. like fast food	☐	☐	☐	☐
I. watch a lot of TV	☐	☐	☐	☐
J. play computer games	☐	☐	☐	☐

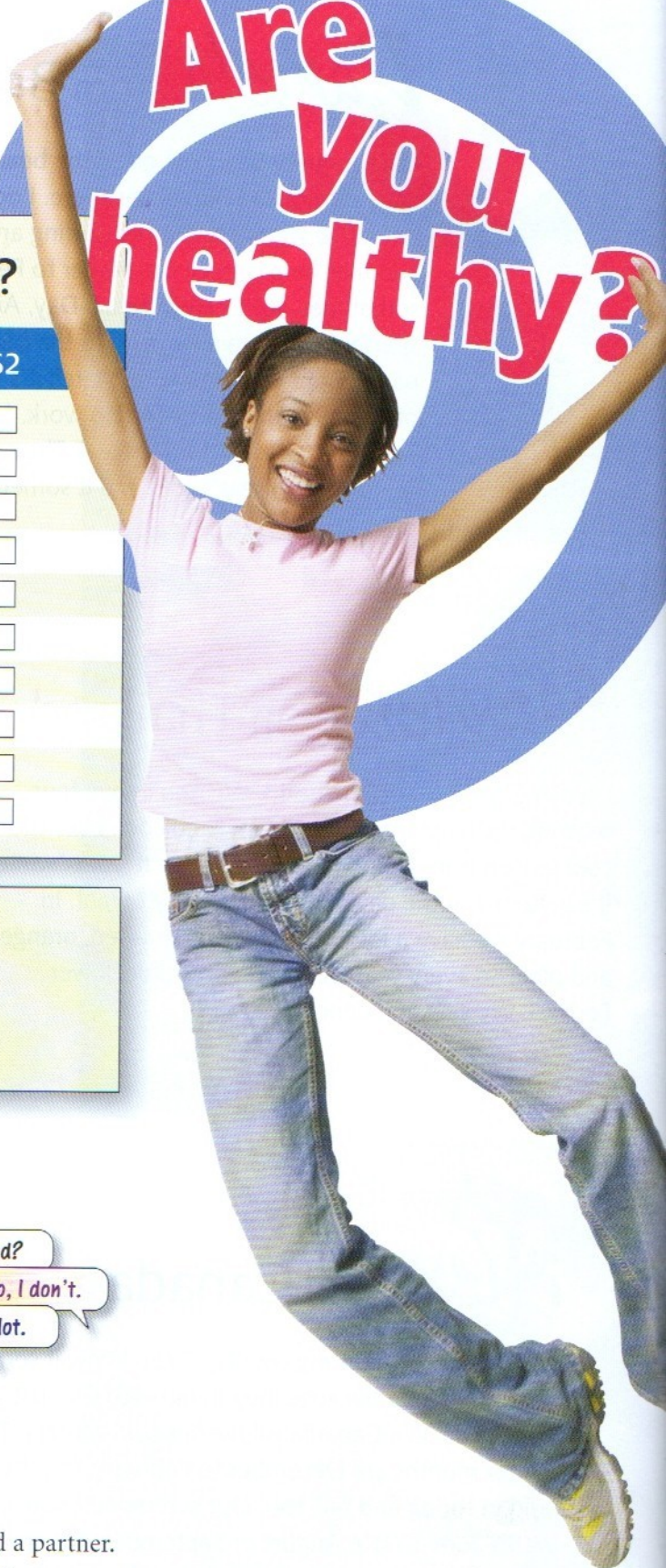
KEY

A B C D E ✓ = 1 point
X = 0 point

F G H I J X = 1 point
✓ = 0 point

7-10 points Very good!
4-6 points OK
0-3 points Oh, no!

Are you healthy?



- 2 Ask your teacher the questions, then ask two students.
Complete the questionnaire about them.

Do you stay up late?

Yes, I do./Yes, sometimes.

No, I don't./No, never.

Do you like fast food?

No, I don't.

Yes, I like it a lot.

- 3 Compare with the class. Who is healthy in the class?

Writing

- 4 Use the information in the questionnaire. Write about you and a partner.
I don't have breakfast every morning, but Sofia does. We don't eat a lot of vegetables ...

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Social expressions

1 Complete the conversations with the expressions.



1. A _____. The traffic is bad today.
B _____. Come and sit down.
We're on page 25.

That's OK.
I'm sorry I'm late.



2. A _____.
B Yes?
A Do you have a dictionary?
B _____ I don't. It's at home.
A Oh, OK. _____.

I'm sorry,
Excuse me.
Thanks anyway.



3. A It's very hot in here. _____?
B _____? I'm kind of cold.
A OK. _____.

Really?
Can I open the
window?
It doesn't matter.



4. A _____.
B Oh, good morning Miguel. Can I help you?
A Yes, please. Can I have a ticket for the ski trip?
B Yes, of course. It's \$80. Do you want to pay \$20 deposit now?
A Sorry. _____?
B It means you can pay the \$20 now and \$60 later.
A Ah! _____! Yes, please.

Now I understand!
What does
"deposit" mean?
Excuse me.

CD1 47 Listen and check.

Music of English

CD1 48 Listen and practice the expressions in conversations 1-4. Pay attention to stress and intonation.

2 Practice the conversations with a partner.

5

Where do you live?

- Grammar:** *There is/are* • Prepositions • *Some/any* • *This/that/these/those*
- Vocabulary:** Furniture
Everyday English: Directions 1

STARTER 1 Write the words in the correct column.

an armchair a refrigerator a television a table
a shelf a plant a DVD player a dishwasher
a sink a lamp a stove a closet
a telephone a cabinet a sofa

2 What's in your living room? Tell a partner.

living room	kitchen	both

WHAT'S IN THE LIVING ROOM?

There is/are, prepositions

1 Suzie has a new apartment. Describe her living room on page 33.

There's a television.

There are two photos.

2 **CD2 2** Read and listen. Complete the answers. Practice the questions and answers.

Is there a television? Yes, there _____.
Is there a computer? No, there _____.
Are there any books? Yes, there _____.
How many books are there? There _____ a lot.
Are there any pictures? No, there _____.



GRAMMAR SPOT

Complete the chart.

Affirmative	There		a television.
			some books.
Negative	There		a computer.
			any pictures.
Question		there	a telephone?
			any plants?

►► Grammar Reference 5.1 and 5.2 p. 116

3 Ask and answer questions about these things in Suzie's living room.

a cat a dog a DVD player a fireplace
a mirror a clock a coffee table a rug

plants pictures shelves curtains
newspapers photos cushions DVDs

Is there a cat?

Yes, there is.

PRACTICE

- 4 Describe Suzie's living room. Complete the sentences with a preposition.

on under next to in front of behind

1. The cat is _____ the sofa _____ Suzie.
2. The DVD player is _____ the television.
3. There's a photo _____ the mirror.
4. There aren't any pictures _____ the walls.
5. There's a lamp _____ the sofa.
6. There are some magazines _____ the rug _____ the sofa.

What's in your picture?

- 1 Work with a partner. *Don't* look at your partner's picture.

Student A

Look at the incomplete picture of the living room on page 123. Ask Student B questions to find out where the things go. Draw them on your picture.

Student B

Look at the complete picture of the living room on page 125. Answer Student A's questions to help complete the picture.

Where's the lamp?

It's on the table.

Where exactly?

Next to the book.

- 2 **CD2** 3 Look at the complete picture together on page 125. Listen to someone describing it. There are *five* mistakes in the description. Say "Stop!" when you hear a mistake.

Stop! There aren't three people! There are four people!



WHAT'S IN THE KITCHEN?

some/any, this/that/these/those

- 1 This is Suzie's kitchen. Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about these things.

apples a stove a refrigerator cabinets plates flowers

Are there any apples?

Yes, there are.

Where are they?

They're next to the stove.



- 2 **CD2** 4 Listen and complete the conversation between Suzie and her mom.

Suzie And this is the kitchen.

Mom Mmm, it's very nice.

Suzie Well, it's not very big, but there _____ a _____ of cabinets.
And _____'s a new refrigerator, and a stove. That's new, too.

Mom But what's *in* all these cabinets?

Suzie Well, not a lot. There are some cups, but there aren't any glasses.
And I have _____ knives and forks, but I don't have _____ spoons!

Mom Do you have _____ plates?

Suzie Yes, I do. Here they are.

Mom Good. We can use those plates for this cake.

- 3 What is there in *your* kitchen? How is your kitchen different from Suzie's?

GRAMMAR SPOT

- What's the difference between the sentences?
There are two magazines.
There are some magazines.
- When do we say *some*? When do we say *any*?
There are some cups.
There aren't any glasses.
Are there any spoons?
- Complete the sentences with *this*, *that*, *these*, or *those*.



I like _____ cake.



_____ stove is new.



_____ flowers are nice.



Give me _____ cups.

► Grammar Reference 5.3 and 5.4 p. 116

PRACTICE

In our classroom

- Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.
 - In our classroom there are _____ books on the floor.
 - There aren't _____ plants.
 - Are there _____ Mexican students in your class?
 - There aren't _____ Chinese students.
 - We have _____ dictionaries in the cabinet.
 - There aren't _____ pens in my bag.
- What is there in your classroom? Describe it.
- Talk about things in your classroom, using *this/that/these/those*. Point to or hold the things.

This is my favorite pen.

I like that bag.

These chairs are nice.

Those windows are dirty.

What's in Yoshi's briefcase?

- CD2 5** Yoshi Ishigawa is on business in New York. Listen to him describe what's in his briefcase. Put a check (✓) next to the things in it.



- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| ☐ a newspaper | ☐ a notebook | ☐ a letter |
| ☐ a dictionary | ☐ keys | ☐ a cell phone |
| ☐ a sandwich | ☐ a bus ticket | ☐ stamps |
| ☐ pens | ☐ photos | ☐ an address book |

- Look in *your* bag. Ask and answer questions about your bags with a partner.

Is there a dictionary in your bag?

Are there any stamps?

How many stamps are there?

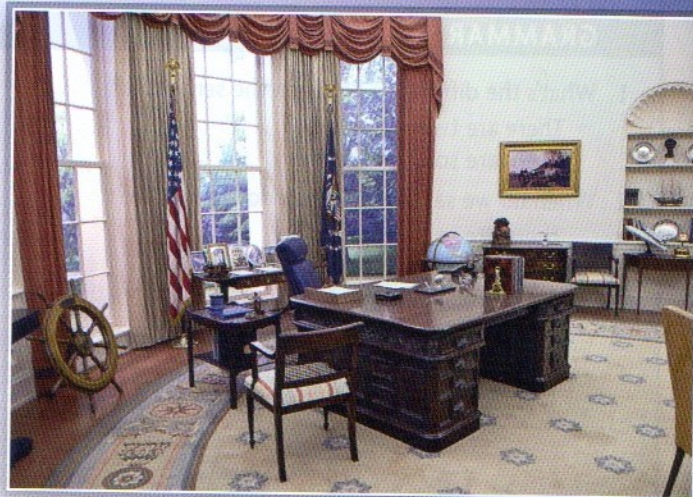
Check it

- Put a check (✓) next to the correct sentence.
 - ☐ There aren't some sandwiches.
☐ There aren't any sandwiches.
 - ☐ Do you have some good dictionary?
☐ Do you have a good dictionary?
 - ☐ I have some photos of my dog.
☐ I have any photos of my dog.
 - ☐ I have lot of books.
☐ I have a lot of books.
 - ☐ How many students are there in this class?
☐ How many of students are there in this class?
 - ☐ Next my house there's a park.
☐ Next to my house there's a park.
 - ☐ Look at this house over there!
☐ Look at that house over there!
 - ☐ Henry, that is my mother. Mom, that is Henry.
☐ Henry, this is my mother. Mom, this is Henry.

READING AND SPEAKING

The White House

- 1 Look at the pictures of the White House. What can you see?
- 2 What do you know about the White House? Mark these statements true (✓) or false (✗).
 - ☐ The White House is more than 200 years old.
 - ☐ No one lives in the White House.
 - ☐ All the rooms are government offices.
 - ☐ The Oval Office is where the President works.
 - ☐ The White House is open to the public.
 - ☐ There are a lot of things for a President to do in his free time.
- 3 Read the text about the White House. Check your answers in Exercise 2.
- 4 Answer the questions.
 1. What's the address of the White House?
 2. Where exactly in the White House does the President live?
 3. Where does the President work?
 4. Where do special guests stay?
 5. What is in the Oval Office?
 6. What does each new president change in the Oval Office?
 7. How many people work in the White House?
 8. What does a President do to relax?
 9. Why is the White House like a luxury hotel?



- 5 Find the following numbers in the reading. What do they refer to?

50 **There are fifty states.**

304 million 6000 132 35 5 6 140

- 6 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about the White House.

Is there a garden?

Yes, there is.

Are there many offices?

Yes, there are.

Ask about these things:

- a big dining room
- many bathrooms
- a swimming pool
- a fireplace
- any elevators
- a tennis court

What do you think?

- What's the name of a famous building in your country? Where is it? Is it a government building? A palace? A cathedral? A museum?
- Tell the other students about it.



NW 1600 BLK PENNSYLVANIA AVE

INSIDE THE WHITE HOUSE

America's most famous address

The most famous address in Washington, DC is 1600 Pennsylvania Avenue. This is the White House. It is the President's private home, where he lives with his family, and it is also his official residence, where he works.

The building

First built in the 1790s, the White House is where the President of the United States governs a country of 50 states and 304 million people.

He lives with his family on the second and third floors. There are 16 bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen, and a dining room. Special guests stay in the Queen's Bedroom or the Lincoln Bedroom.

The West Wing contains the offices of his staff, and also the Oval Office. This is the President's personal office. It has three large windows behind the president's desk and there is a fireplace at the other end. Each new president chooses new curtains and furniture, and a special new carpet. There are pictures of former presidents on the wall, and there is the famous desk, a gift from the British Queen Victoria in 1880.

The White House day by day

The White House is open to the public free of charge. About 6,000 people visit every day. Sometimes the President meets special visitors in the East Room, and most days he talks to journalists in the Press Room.

About 150 people work for the President in the West Wing and for the First Lady in the East Wing. Another 100 people work to look after the building day and night.

There are 132 rooms, 35 bathrooms, and five kitchens, all on six floors. There are three elevators. The State Dining Room is big enough for 140 guests.

Outside in the gardens there is a tennis court, a jogging track, and a swimming pool. Inside there is a movie theater, a billiard room, a bowling lane, and a library.

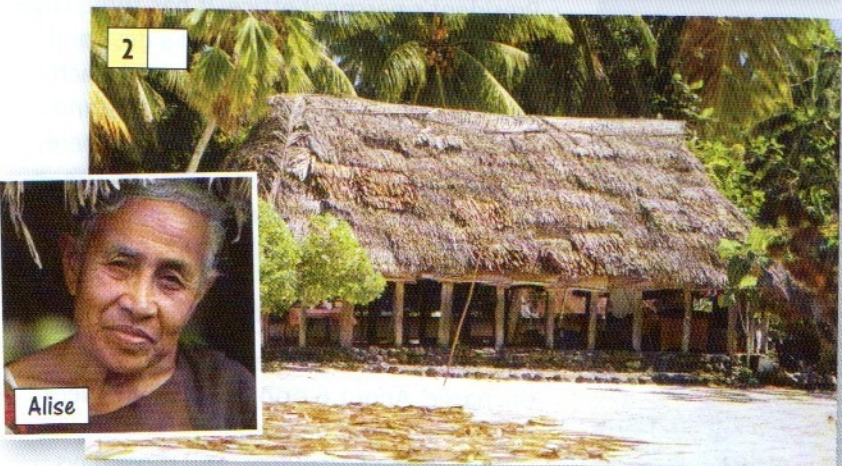
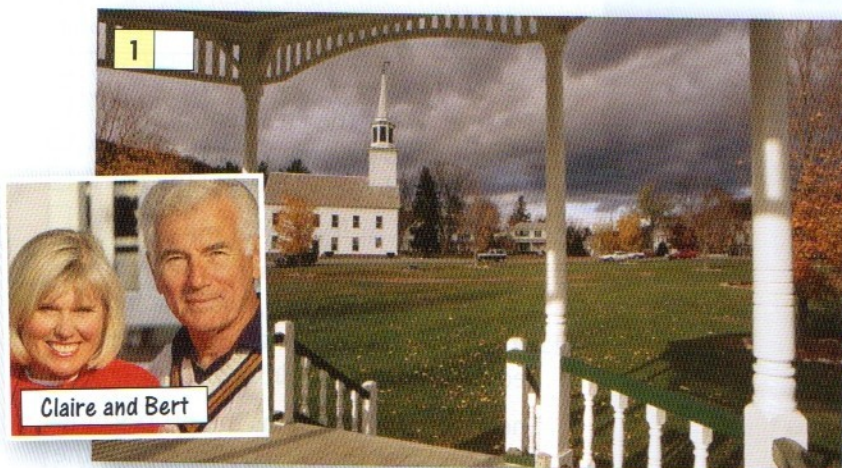
As former President Reagan said, "The White House is like an eight-star hotel!"

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Homes around the world

1 Match the places and photos 1– 4.

a. Lisbon b. New England c. Seoul d. Samoa



2 **CD2 6** Listen to the people from these places. Complete the chart.

	Claire and Bert	Alise	Kwan	Manola
House or apartment?				
Old or modern?				
Where?				
How many bedrooms?				
Live(s) with?				
Extra information				

3 Work with a partner. Talk about the people.

Claire and Bert live in an old, white house.

Alise lives in a house near the sea.

4 Talk about where you live.

Do you live in a house or an apartment?

Where is it?

How many rooms ... ?

Do you have a yard?

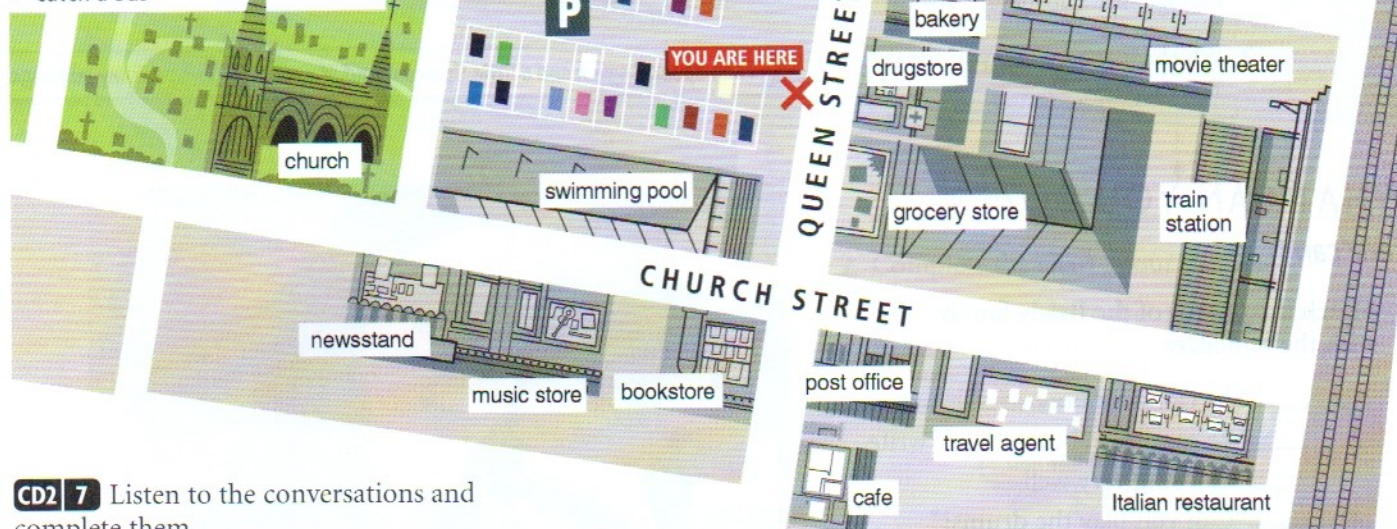
Who ... ?

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Directions 1

1 Look at the street map. Where can you do these things? Find the places on the map.

- buy: aspirin some bread
 a book milk
 a DVD stamps
- send an e-mail
- go for a walk
- see a movie
- have coffee
- catch a bus



2 **CD2 7** Listen to the conversations and complete them.

- A _____ me. Is there a _____ near here?

B Yes. _____ Church Street. Take the first _____ right. It's _____ the music store.

A OK. Thanks.
- A Is there a post office near here?

B Go straight ahead, and it's _____ left, _____ the travel agent.

A Thanks a lot.
- A Excuse me. Is there a _____ near here?

B There's an Internet cafe on Park Lane _____ the bank, and there's an Italian restaurant on Church Street next to the _____.

A Is that one _____?

B No. Just two minutes, that's all.

3 Practice the conversations in Exercise 2 with a partner.

4 Make more conversations with your partner. Use the expressions in the box to ask and answer about the places.

near here	over there	on the corner
on the right/left	straight ahead	

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| • a bookstore | • a bus stop |
| • a movie theater | • a park |
| • a bank | • a swimming pool |
| • a grocery store | • a church |
| • the train station | • a cafe |
| • a parking lot | • a travel agent |

5 Talk about where *you* are. Is there a drugstore near here? Is it far? What about a bank/a post office/a grocery store?

Music of English

CD2 8 Listen and repeat. Copy the stress and intonation.

Excuse me. Is there a drugstore near *here*?

Yes, it's *over there*.

Excuse me. Is there a bakery near *here*?

Yes, it's *on the corner*.

6 Can you speak English?

Grammar: Can/can't • Was/were

Vocabulary: Words that sound the same

Everyday English: On the phone

STARTER 1 Where do people speak these languages?

French Spanish Korean Italian
Portuguese Japanese English

They speak French in France and also in Canada.

2 Which languages can you speak? Tell the class.

I can speak English and a little Spanish. And of course, I can speak my language.

WHAT CAN YOU DO?

can/can't

1 Match the photos of the Brady family with the sentences.

- _____ She can walk now.
- _____ We can draw, but we can't write.
- _____ I can sing very well.
- _____ "Can you play the drums?"
"Yes, I can." "No, he can't!"
- _____ "Can they dance?"
"Yes, they can. My dad is OK,
and my mom can dance flamenco
really well."

CD2 9 Listen and check.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Say all persons of *can* and *can't*.
What do you notice?
I can, you can, he... she... it... we... they...
I can't, you..., etc.

Pronunciation

- 2 CD2 10 Listen and repeat these sentences.

I can speak Spanish. = /kən/
Can you speak Spanish? = /kæn/
Yes, I can. = /kæn/
No, I can't. = /kænt/

- 3 Say these sentences.

• • • • •
We can draw. She can't write.

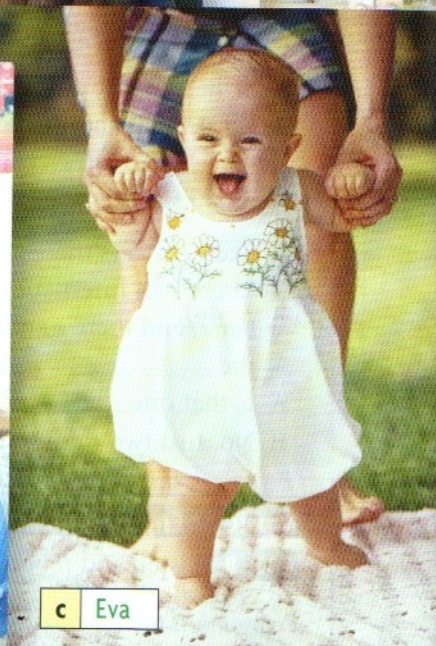
►► Grammar Reference 6.1 p. 117



a Lucia



b David



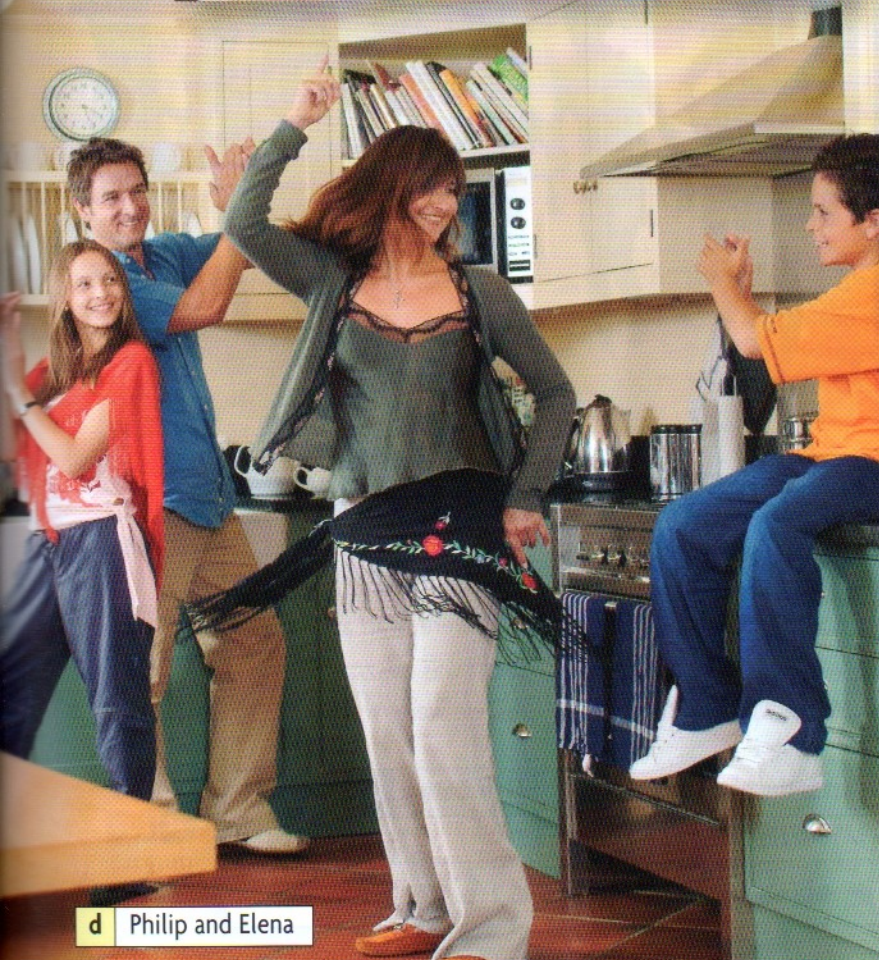
c Eva

2 **CD2 11** Listen and complete the sentences with *can* or *can't* + verb.

1. I _____, but I _____.
2. He _____, but he _____.
3. "_____ you _____?" "Yes, I _____."
4. They _____, but they _____.
5. We _____ and we _____.
6. "_____ she _____?" "No, she _____."



e Ben and Ana



d Philip and Elena

PRACTICE

Lucia can't cook. Can you?

1 **CD2 12** Listen to Lucia and complete the chart. Put a ✓ or an X.

Can ... ?	Lucia	You	Partner
drive a car	☐	☐	☐
speak French	☐	☐	☐
speak Spanish	☐	☐	☐
cook	☐	☐	☐
play tennis	☐	☐	☐
ski	☐	☐	☐
swim	☐	☐	☐
play the guitar	☐	☐	☐
dance	☐	☐	☐
use a computer	☐	☐	☐

2 Complete the chart about you.

3 Complete the chart about your partner. Ask and answer the questions.

Can you drive a car?

No, I can't.

Can you ski?

Yes, I can. But not very well.

Tell the class about you and your partner.

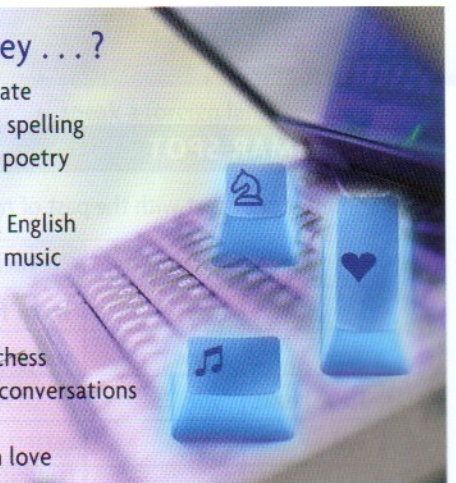
Luis can ski, but I can't.

What can computers do?

4 What can computers do? Discuss with a partner.

Can they ... ?

- ☐ translate
- ☐ check spelling
- ☐ write poetry
- ☐ feel
- ☐ speak English
- ☐ make music
- ☐ laugh
- ☐ think
- ☐ play chess
- ☐ have conversations
- ☐ hear
- ☐ fall in love



Imagine you live in 2050. What can/can't a computer do?

WHERE WERE YOU YESTERDAY?

was/were, can/could

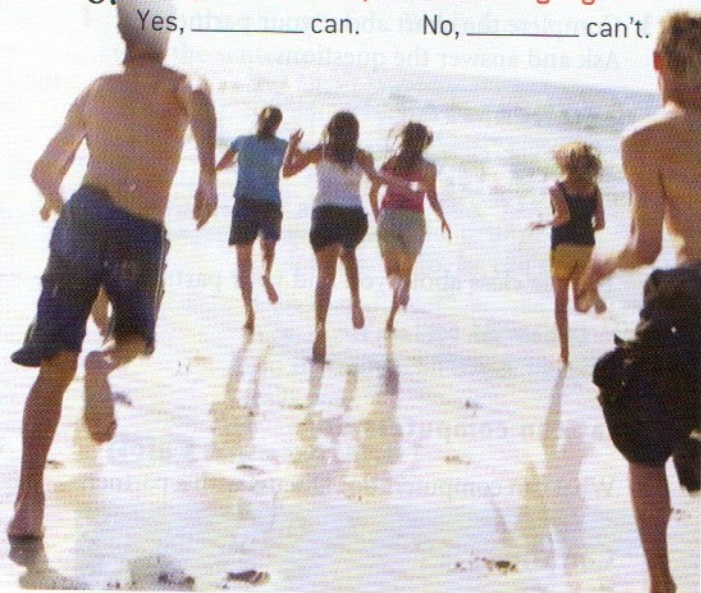
CD2 13 Read and listen to the questions. Complete the answers.

Present

1. What day is it today?
It's _____.
2. What month is it now?
It's _____.
3. Where are you now?
I'm in/at _____.
4. Are you in the United States?
_____, I am. _____, I'm not.
5. Can you swim?
_____, I can. _____, I can't.
6. Can your teacher speak three languages?
Yes, _____ can. No, _____ can't.

Past

- What day was it yesterday?
It was _____.
- What month was it last month?
It was _____.
- Where were you yesterday?
I was in/at _____.
- Were you in the United States in 2000?
_____, I was. _____, I wasn't.
- Could you swim when you were five?
_____, I could. _____, I couldn't.
- Could your teacher speak English when he/she was seven?
Yes, _____ could. No, _____ couldn't.



GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the chart with the past of *to be*.

	Affirmative	Negative
I	was	wasn't
You	were	weren't
He/She/It		
We		
They		

Pronunciation

2 **CD2 14** Listen and repeat.

It was /wəz/ Monday yesterday. We were /wɜr/ at school.

Was /wəz/ it hot?

Yes, it was /wəz/.

Were /wɜr/ you tired?

Yes, we were /wɜr/.

3 What is the past of *can*?

	Affirmative	Negative
I/You/He/She/It/We/They		

► Grammar Reference 6.1 and 6.2 p. 117

PRACTICE

Talking about you

1 Ask and answer questions with a partner.

Where were you ... ?

- at eight o'clock this morning
- at six-thirty yesterday evening
- at two o'clock this morning
- at this time yesterday
- at ten o'clock last night
- last Saturday evening

2 Complete Emma and Miguel's conversation, using *was*, *were*, *wasn't*, *weren't*, or *couldn't*.



E _____ you at Charlotte's party last Saturday?

M Yes, I _____.

E _____ it good?

M Well, it _____ OK.

E _____ there many people?

M Yes, there _____.

E _____ Paul there?

M No, he _____. And where _____ you? Why _____ you there?

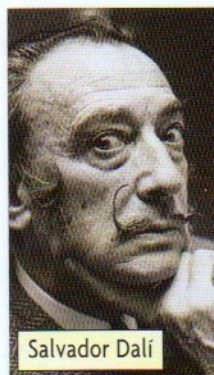
E Oh ... I _____ go because I _____ at Sergio's party! It _____ great!

M Oh!

CD2 15 Listen and check. Listen for the pronunciation of *was* and *were*. Practice with a partner.

Four geniuses!

3 What are these people famous for? Discuss with a partner.



Salvador Dalí



Charlotte Brontë



Tiger Woods



Albert Einstein

4 Look at these sentences.

I was born in London in 1983. I could read when I was four. My sister couldn't read until she was seven.

Match lines in A, B, and C and make similar sentences about the four geniuses.

A	B	C
Salvador Dalí	the U.S./1975	play golf/three
Charlotte Brontë	Germany/1879	paint/one
Tiger Woods	England/1816	write stories/four
Albert Einstein	Spain/1904	couldn't speak/eight

5 Ask and answer questions with a partner about the geniuses.

When was Salvador Dalí born?

Where was he born?

How old was he when he could ... ?

6 Work in groups. Ask and answer the questions.

1. Where were you born?

2. When were you born?

3. How old were you when you could ... ?

- walk • talk • read • swim
- ride a bike • use a computer • speak a foreign language

Check it

7 Put a check (✓) next to the correct sentence.

- ☐ I don't can use a computer. ☐ I can't use a computer.
- ☐ I can to speak English very well. ☐ I can speak English very well.
- ☐ I'm sorry. I can't go to the party. ☐ I'm sorry. I no can go to the party.
- ☐ He could play chess when he was five. ☐ He can play chess when he was five.
- ☐ Was they at the party? ☐ Were they at the party?
- ☐ She was no at home. ☐ She wasn't at home.

READING AND SPEAKING

Young and talented

- 1 Do you like singing? Can you sing well? Do you like reading? What do you read? Look at the people in the photographs. What can they do?
- 2 Work in two groups.
Group A Read about the writer.
Group B Read about the singer.
- 3 Answer the questions about Joss or Christopher.
 1. Why is he/she famous?
 2. Where was he/she born?
 3. Where does he/she live?
 4. What could or couldn't he/she do when he/she was very young?
 5. When was he/she first successful?
 6. Why were his/her parents surprised?
 7. What were his/her first two books/albums called?
 8. Where was he/she last year?
 9. Does he/she act in the movies?
- 4 Find a partner from the other group. Tell your partner about Christopher or Joss, using your answers.
- 5 What is the same about Joss and Christopher? What is different? Discuss with your partner.

They were both talented teenagers.

*Joss is a singer.
Christopher is a writer.*

Role play

- 6 Work with a partner.

Student A is a journalist.

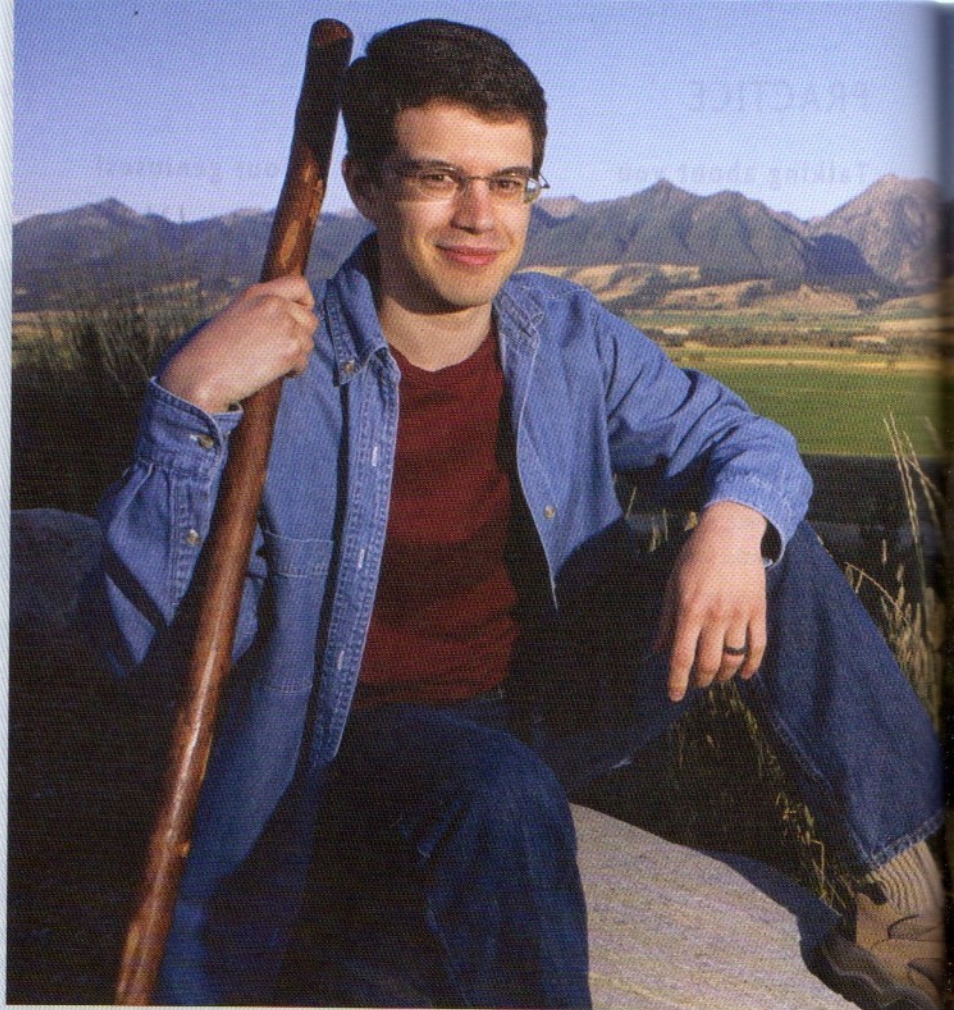
Student B is Joss or Christopher.

Ask and answer questions, using the questions in Exercise 3 to help you.

Hello, Joss! Can I ask you one or two questions?

Of course.

First of all, where were you born?



THE SOUL SINGER

CAN A SIXTEEN-YEAR-OLD SING THE BLUES? CAN A WHITE GIRL SING SOUL? JOSS STONE KNOWS SHE CAN.

Joss was born in a small village in Devon in the south of England, but she now lives and works in Los Angeles. She was a shy schoolgirl with a fantastic voice, but now she is a famous soul singer.

Joss could sing very well when she was a little girl. Her parents were very surprised. Her mom says "No one in our family can sing—only Joss. I can't sing a note!" At school, her friends couldn't understand her music. Joss says, "I love soul music, but they don't. They prefer pop."

Her first album, "The Soul Sessions" was very successful. Joss was only 16. Her second, "Mind, Body & Soul" was also a hit. Now she sings all over the world. Last year she was in 16 cities, including San Francisco, Chicago, Toronto, Los Angeles, and Mexico City. She was also in the movie *Eragon*. She was a witch called Angela! Joss is young, rich, famous, and very talented.



THE FANTASY WRITER

CAN A FIFTEEN-YEAR-OLD WRITE A NUMBER ONE BESTSELLER?
CAN HIS BOOKS SELL MORE THAN "HARRY POTTER"?

CHRISTOPHER PAOLINI SAYS, "YES, THEY CAN!"

Christopher was born in Southern California, but he now lives with his family in Paradise Valley, Montana, in the countryside near the tall Beartooth Mountains. Christopher loves the mountains. He writes about them in his books.

Christopher can't stop writing. This is surprising because when he was very young he couldn't read very well. His parents were his teachers, and finally one day—"It was magic," he says, "I could read. I could see pictures in my head. I could write my own stories." His parents were very surprised when his first book became a number one bestseller. It was a fantasy called *Eragon* and it was published when Christopher was just 15. His next book, *Eldest*, was also very successful.

Christopher tours the world to talk about his books. Last year he was in Canada, the UK, Spain, Germany, France and Italy. His book *Eragon* is now a movie and Christopher is famous.



VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Words that sound the same

- 1 Look at the sentences. What do you notice about these words?

I **write** with my **right** hand.

I have a black **eye**.

No, he doesn't **know** the answer.

- 2 Find the words in B that have the same pronunciation as the words in A.

A hear write wear see eye
there by for hour
know son four
to I sun our
sea where buy here
right no two their **B**

- 3 Correct the two spelling mistakes in each sentence.

hear

see

- I can ~~here~~ you, but I can't ~~sea~~ you.
- There are three bedrooms in ~~hour~~ house.
- I don't ~~no~~ wear Jill ~~lives~~.
- My ~~sun~~ lives near the ~~see~~.
- Don't ~~where~~ that hat, by a new one!
- Know, ~~eye~~ can't come to your party.
- You were ~~write~~. Sally can't come four dinner.
- There ~~daughter~~ could ~~right~~ when she was three.
- I ~~no~~ my answers are ~~write~~.

CD2 16 Listen and repeat.

- 4 Look at the phonetic symbols. Write the two words with the same pronunciation.

- /noʊ/ know _____
- /sʌn/ son _____
- /tu/ too _____
- /raɪt/ right _____
- /hɪr/ here _____
- /wɛr/ wear _____

►► **Phonetic symbols p. 134**

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

On the phone

- 1 Here are the names and addresses of some people you want to call.

Lisa Jefferson
Freelance Journalist

89 Franklin Street
Boston, Massachusetts
USA

Cambridge
Herald

tel _____
email ljefferson@usa.net

Yoshi Ishigawa
BUSINESSMAN

659 Tearaimizu-cho
KYOTO 604-8152
JAPAN

Tel: _____
email: ishigawa@nkg.or.jp

Travel
Peru

Alejandro Diaz
Tour guide

Jiron Junín 612
Lima PERU

Tel: _____
email: almdiaz@travel.co.pe

- CD2 17** Listen to the operator. Answer her questions to get Lisa's telephone number.

Operator International Directory Assistance.
Which country, please?
You The U.S.
Operator And which city?
You _____
Operator Can I have the last name, please?
You _____
Operator And the first name?
You _____
Operator What's the address?
You _____
Recorded message The number is _____.

Role play

- 2 Work with a partner. Take turns to be the operator. Make conversations to find out the telephone numbers of Yoshi and Alejandro.

Student A Go to page 123. **Student B** Go to page 125.

3 Complete conversations 1–3 with these lines. Check answers with a partner.

1. Can I take a message?
2. Great! I'll see you on Sunday at ten, then. Bye!
3. This is Jo.
4. Oh, that's OK. Maybe next time. Bye!
5. There's a party at my house on Saturday. Can you come?
6. No, it isn't. I'll get her.
7. I'll call back later.
8. Can I speak to the manager, please?

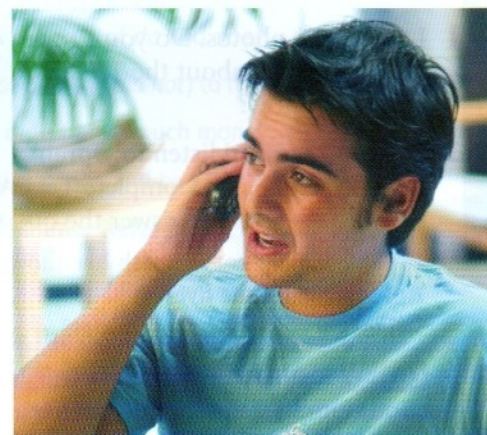
! I'll = I will
will = an offer or promise
I'll help you.



1. A Hello?
B Hello. Can I speak to Jo, please?
A _____
B Oh! Hi, Jo. This is Nicole. Is Sunday still OK for tennis?
A Yes, that's fine.
B _____!
A Bye!



2. A Hello?
B Hello. Is this Emma?
A _____
...
C Hello, this is Emma.
B Hi, Emma. It's Miguel. Listen!
_____?
C Oh, sorry, Miguel. I can't. It's my sister's wedding.
B _____!
C Bye!



3. A Good morning. Dixons Electrical. How can I help you?
B Good morning. _____?
A I'm afraid Mr. Smith isn't in his office at the moment. _____?
B No, that's OK. _____.
A All right. Good-bye.
B Good-bye.



4 **CD2 18** Listen and check.

Music of English

CD2 19 Listen and practice the telephone expressions.

Can I speak to Jo, please?

I'll call back later.

Is this Emma?

Can I take a message?

I'll get her.

5 Practice the conversations. Make similar conversations with your partner.

▶▶ WRITING Formal letters **p. 97**

7

Then and now

Grammar: Past Simple 1 –
Regular verbs • Irregular verbs

Vocabulary: Words that go
together

Everyday English: What's the
date?

STARTER When were your grandparents and great-grandparents born? Where were they born? Do you know all their names? What were their jobs? If you know, tell the class.

A life past and present

Past Simple – regular verbs

1 Look at the photos. Do you know anything about the TV star, Oprah Winfrey?

2 **CD2 20** Read and listen to Oprah Winfrey's life now. Complete Text **A** with the verbs you hear. Answer the questions.

1. How many people watch her show?
2. Where does she live?
3. Does she earn a lot of money?

3 **CD2 21** Read and listen to Text **B** about Oprah's childhood. Answer the questions.

1. Where and when was she born?
2. Were her parents rich?
3. Was she smart? What could she do?

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the sentences about Oprah.

Now she _____ in California.

When she was a child she _____ with her grandmother.

2 Look at Text **B**. Find the Past Simple of the verbs *work*, *clean*, *receive*, *study*, and *start*. How is it formed?

►► Grammar Reference 7.1 p. 118

Oprah Winfrey

TV star and billionaire



A Who is she?

Oprah Winfrey (1) is a famous American TV talk show host.

Forty-nine million people in 134 countries (2) _____ her show every week. She (3) _____

in California but she also

(4) _____ an apartment in

Chicago, where she (5) _____.

Oprah is one of the richest women in

America. She (6) _____ millions of

dollars every year. She (7) _____ a lot of money to charity.

B Oprah's childhood

She was born on January 29th, 1954 in Kosciusko, Mississippi. Her parents were very poor. Her father, Vernon Winfrey, worked in a coal mine and her mother, Vernita, cleaned houses. They couldn't look after Oprah so she lived with her grandmother, Hattie Mae. Oprah was clever, she could read before she was three and when she was 17 she received a scholarship to Tennessee State University, where she studied drama. She also started reading the news at the local radio station.

C Oprah the TV star

In 1984 Oprah (1) _____ to Chicago to work on a TV talk show called *A.M. Chicago*. She (2) _____ to lots of interesting people about their problems. Oprah says, "People's problems are my problems." The show was very successful, so in 1985 it was renamed *The Oprah Winfrey Show*. In 1993 she (3) _____ Michael Jackson and 100 million people (4) _____ the program. Last year she (5) _____ \$260,000,000.



In 1998 Oprah (6) _____ the charity Oprah's Angel Network. This helps poor children all over the world. In 2007 she (7) _____ a special school in South Africa, the Oprah Winfrey Leadership Academy for Girls. She says, "When I was a kid, we were poor and we didn't have much money. So what did I do? I (8) _____ hard." There are 152 girls at the school. Oprah calls them her daughters—the children she didn't have in real life.

4 **CD2 22** What is the past of these verbs? Listen and repeat.

watch	talk	move	interview
earn	open	study	start

5 **CD2 23** Listen to Text C. Complete it with the past form of the verbs in Exercise 4.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Look at these questions. Which are present? Which are past?

"Where does Oprah work?"

"In Chicago."

"Where did her father work?"

"In a coal mine."

"Did she have a happy childhood?"

"No, she didn't."

"Does she have any children?"

"No, she doesn't."

Did is the past of *do* and *does*.

2 We use *didn't* (= *did not*) to form the negative.

We **didn't** have much money.

3 Find a question and two negatives in Text C.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 7.2 p. 118

6 Complete the questions about Oprah.

1. Where did her father work?

In a coal mine.

2. What _____ her mother do?

She cleaned houses.

3. Who _____ Oprah _____ with?

Her grandmother.

4. What _____ she _____? Drama.

5. When _____ she _____ Michael Jackson?

In 1993.

6. How much _____ she _____ last year?

\$260 million.

7. When _____ she _____ the girls school?

In 2007.

8. _____ her parent _____ much money?

No, they didn't.

CD2 24 Listen and check. Practice the questions and answers with a partner.

PRACTICE

Talking about you

- 1 Complete the sentences with *did*, *was*, or *were*.

- Where _____ you born?
Where _____ your mother born?
- When _____ you start school?
- When _____ you learn to read and write?
- Who _____ your first teacher?
- What _____ your favorite subject?
- Where _____ you live when you _____ a child?
- _____ you live in a house or an apartment?

- 2 Stand up! Ask two or three students the questions in Exercise 1.
- 3 Tell the class some of the information you learned.

Rick was born in ...

His mother ...

He started school ...

Pronunciation

- 1 **CD2 25** Listen to three different pronunciations of *-ed*.

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/
worked	lived	started

- 2 **CD2 26** Listen and write the Past Simple verbs in the correct column.

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/

Practice saying them.

THE YEAR I WAS BORN

Irregular verbs

- 1 Look at the list of irregular verbs on page 133. Write the Past Simple form of the verbs in the box. Which verb isn't irregular?

be <u>was/were</u>	beat _____	become _____	begin _____
buy _____	come _____	get _____	go _____
have _____	hit _____	invent _____	leave _____
make _____	sell _____	sing _____	win _____

- 2 **CD2 27** Listen and repeat the Past Simple forms.
- 3 James was born in 1989. Look at the pictures. What things from 1989 can you see?
- 4 **CD2 28** Listen to James's conversation with his parents about 1989. Complete the sentences with the verbs you hear. Listen again and check.

1989 ... the year I was born

James was born on January 24, 1989, in São Paulo, where his father (1) had a job. His parents (2) _____ Brazil that year and (3) _____ back to the U.S. His father (4) _____ a job in New York.

WORLD EVENTS

In the U.S., George Herbert Walker Bush (5) _____ the 41st American President. In Russia, Mikhail S. Gorbachev (6) _____ the Soviet Head of State. In Europe, the Cold War between East and West ended and, after 28 years, the Berlin Wall (7) _____ down.

SPORTS

In Major League Baseball, the Oakland Athletics (8) _____ the San Francisco Giants in the World Series. The Series stopped for twelve days when a major earthquake (9) _____ the San Francisco Bay Area moments before the start of Game Three.

SCIENCE/TECHNOLOGY

Tim Berners-Lee (10) _____ the World Wide Web. He (11) _____ many awards and \$1.5 million. Nintendo (12) _____ selling Game Boy in Japan. They (13) _____ 30 million in three years.

ENTERTAINMENT

The Simpsons family (14) _____ their television debut. Madonna (15) _____ "Like a Prayer." It was a number one hit. Twelve million people (16) _____ the album.

5 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about the year James was born.

1. When/James and his parents leave Brazil?
2. Where/his father get a job?
3. How many years/the Berlin Wall stand?
4. Why/the baseball game stop?
5. What/Tim Berners-Lee invent?
6. How much money/he win?
7. How many Game Boys/Nintendo sell?
8. What/Madonna sing?

6 What happened the year you were born? Write some notes. Tell the class.



PRACTICE

When did it happen?

1 Work in groups. Think of important events in history. When did they happen? Make a list, then make questions to ask the other groups.

When did the Second World War begin/end?

When did the first person walk on the moon?

What did you do?

!	night	Monday	yesterday	morning	X last-afternoon
last	week			afternoon	X last-evening
	year			evening	

2 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions with *When did you last ... ?* Ask another question for more information.

When did you last take a vacation?

Last August.

Where did you go?

To Florida.

- take a vacation
- take a photograph
- write an e-mail
- watch a DVD
- go to a party
- get a present
- go shopping
- talk on a cell phone
- eat in a restaurant

Tell the class some things you learned about your partner.

Yukio took a vacation last August and she went to Italy.

Check it

3 Put a check (✓) next to the correct sentence.

1. ☐ He bought some new shoes.
☐ He buyed some new shoes.
2. ☐ Where did you go yesterday?
☐ Where you went yesterday?
3. ☐ You see Jane last week?
☐ Did you see Jane last week?
4. ☐ Did she get the job?
☐ Did she got the job?
5. ☐ I went out yesterday night.
☐ I went out last night.
6. ☐ He studied French at school.
☐ He studyed French at school.
7. ☐ What had you for breakfast?
☐ What did you have for breakfast?
8. ☐ I was in New York the last week.
☐ I was in New York last week.

▶▶ WRITING Describing a vacation p. 98

READING AND SPEAKING

Two famous firsts

1 Translate these words.

nouns

airshow
fighter jet
flight
experiences
satellite

verbs

break a record
travel
disappear
join
survive
crash

adjectives

excellent
dangerous
secret

2 Look at the texts and complete these sentences.

Amelia Mary Earhart was the first _____.

Yuri Gagarin was the first _____.

3 Work in two groups.

Group A Read about Amelia Earhart.

Group B Read about Yuri Gagarin.

4 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗) about your person? Correct the false sentences.

1. _____ He/She came from a rich family.
2. _____ He/She had a short but exciting life.
3. _____ He/She fought in a World War.
4. _____ He/She wanted to be a pilot when he/she was a child.
5. _____ He/She flew fighter jets.
6. _____ He/She married, but didn't have any children.
7. _____ He/She traveled around the world to talk about his/her experiences.
8. _____ He/She died in a plane crash.

5 Find a partner from the other group. Compare Amelia Earhart and Yuri Gagarin, using your answers.

6 Complete the questions about the other person. Then ask and answer them with your partner.

About Amelia Earhart

1. Where ... she born?
2. What ... she study first?
3. When ... she first ... up in a plane?
4. When ... she ... her first record?
5. ... she marry? ... she ... any children?
6. What ... she do in 1935?
7. Where ... her plane disappear?

About Yuri Gagarin

8. Where ... he born?
9. When ... he see his first plane?
10. Why ... he ... the Russian Air Force?
11. Why ... the doctors choose Yuri to be an astronaut?
12. What ... he do in 1961?
13. Why ... he ... around the world?
14. How ... he die?

What do you think?

Name some famous people from history. What did they do?

Two



famous firsts



Amelia Mary Earhart AMERICAN (1897 – 1937)

The first woman to fly across the Atlantic

Her early years

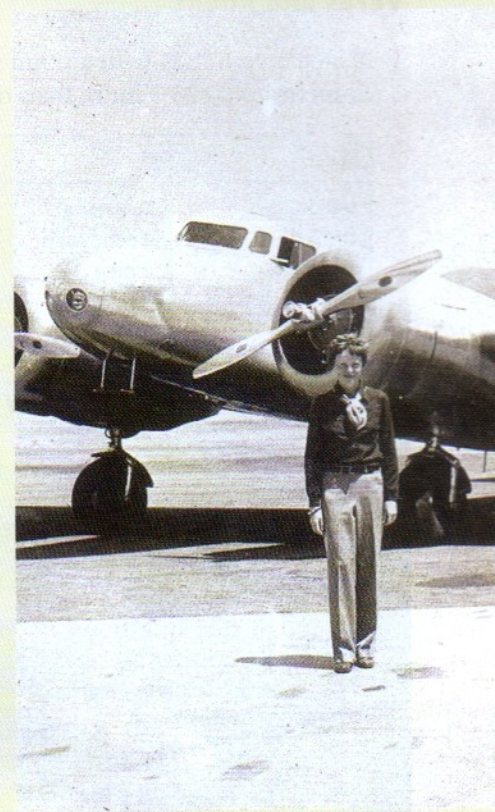
Amelia was born in her grandparents' house in Kansas. Her parents didn't have any money, but her grandparents were rich and sent her to the best schools. At 20 she decided to study nursing and worked in a hospital in World War I. When she was 23, she visited an airshow and went up in a plane. At that moment, she knew that she wanted to be a pilot.

What she did

In 1920 flying was dangerous and people didn't think it was an activity for women. But Amelia took flying lessons, and a year later, she broke her first record — she flew up to 14,000 feet. She married at 34, but never had children. The next year she became the first woman (and the second person) to fly alone across the Atlantic. She was now famous, and she traveled around the world to talk about her experiences. And in 1935, when she was 38, she became the first person to fly alone across the Pacific.

Her last flight

When she was nearly 40, Amelia wanted to be the first woman to fly around the world. She began the 29,000 mile flight in Miami on June 1, 1937. On July 2 she was nearly at the end of her journey, when she and her plane disappeared near Howland Island in the Pacific Ocean.



Yuri Gagarin RUSSIAN (1934 – 1968)

The first man in space

His early years

Yuri was born on a farm and his family was very poor. As a teenager in World War II, he saw his first plane — a Russian fighter jet. At that moment, he knew that he wanted to be a pilot. He studied hard so that he could join a flying club. His teachers thought he was a natural pilot and told him to join the Russian Air Force.

What he did

He became an excellent pilot. And he was now a husband and father. But when the first Russian satellite went into space, he wanted to become an astronaut. After two years of secret training, the doctors chose Yuri because he was the best in all the tests. On April 12, 1961, when he was 27, he finally went into space. It was very dangerous, because the doctors didn't know if Yuri could survive the journey. When he came back to Earth he was famous, and he traveled around the world to talk about his experiences.

His last flight

He wanted to go into space again, so in 1967 he began training for the next space flight. He was also a test pilot for new Air Force airplanes. But the next year he died when his fighter jet crashed on a test flight. He was only 34.



VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Words that go together

Verbs and nouns

- 1 Match a verb in A with a noun in B.
Sometimes there is more than one answer.

A	B
become	television
drink	a sandwich
drive	a bike
eat	a pilot
break	a car
cook	a meal
play	a lot of money
watch	the guitar
win	Spanish
speak	a record
ride	a cup of coffee
earn	a medal

Ask and answer questions.

Do you drink tea in the morning?

No, I don't. I drink coffee.

When did you last eat a sandwich?

This morning./Yesterday./Last week.

Prepositions

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- I like listening to music.
- I went to the beach with my friends.
- We went to Jamaica on our vacation last year.
- She traveled around the world.
- I get up at eleven o'clock on Sundays.
- My father works in an office downtown.
- Our town has a lot of tourists during the summer.
- My parents are at home at the moment.
- What's on television this evening?
- I wrote an e-mail to my daughter.

Compound nouns

- 3 Match a noun in A with a noun in B.
Do we write one word or two?

post office homework

A	B
orange	paper
train	room
swimming	pool
hand	juice
boy	lot
news	star
movie	card
birthday	station
washing	machine
living	friend
parking	bag

- CD2 29 Listen, check, and repeat.

- 4 Test the other students!

This is where we can go swimming.

A swimming pool!

I buy this every day and read it.

A newspaper.

- 5 CD2 30 Listen to four conversations. What are they about? Which compound nouns do you hear?

- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

Look at the audio script on page 108.
Practice the four conversations
with a partner.



EVERYDAY ENGLISH

What's the date?

1 Write the correct word below the numbers.

fourth	twelfth	sixth	twentieth	second	thirtieth
thirteenth	thirty-first	fifth	seventeenth	tenth	
sixteenth	first	third	twenty-first		

1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th

6th 10th 12th 13th 16th

17th 20th 21st 30th 31st

CD2 31 Listen and practice saying the ordinals.



2 Ask and answer questions with a partner about the months of the year.

Which is the first month?

January.



We write: 4/3/1999 or April 3, 1999

We say: "April third, nineteen ninety-nine."

Notice how we say these years:

1900 "nineteen hundred"

1905 "nineteen oh five"

2001 "two thousand and one"

2012 "two thousand and twelve" or "twenty twelve"

3 Practice saying these dates.

April 1

November 19

12/19/83

March 2

June 23

10/3/99

5/31/2000

September 17

2/29/76

7/15/2007

CD2 32 Listen and check.

4 CD2 33 Listen and write the dates you hear.

5 Ask and answer the questions with your partner.

1. What's the date today?
2. When did this class start? When does it end?
3. When's Valentine's Day?
4. When's Mother's Day this year?
5. When's your birthday?
6. What century is it now?
7. What are the dates of public holidays in your country?

8

A date to remember

Grammar: Past Simple 2 • negatives • ago

Vocabulary: Spelling and silent letters

Everyday English: Special occasions

STARTER What is the Past Simple of these verbs? Most of them are irregular.

eat drink drive fly listen to make ride take watch wear

FAMOUS INVENTIONS

Past Simple negatives – ago

- Match the verbs from the Starter with the photos.
- Work in groups. What year was it a hundred years ago? Ask and answer questions about the things in the photos. What did people do? What didn't they do?

Did people drive cars a hundred years ago?

Yes, I think they did.

I'm not so sure.

No, they didn't.

- Tell the class the things you think people did and didn't do.

We think people drove cars, but they didn't watch TV.

Getting information

- When were the things in the photos invented? Ask and answer with a partner.

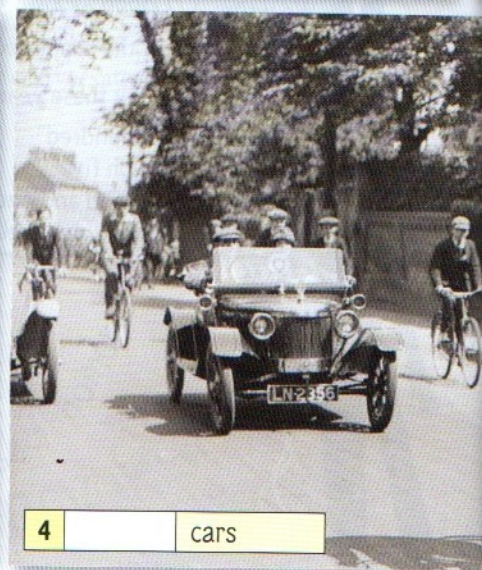
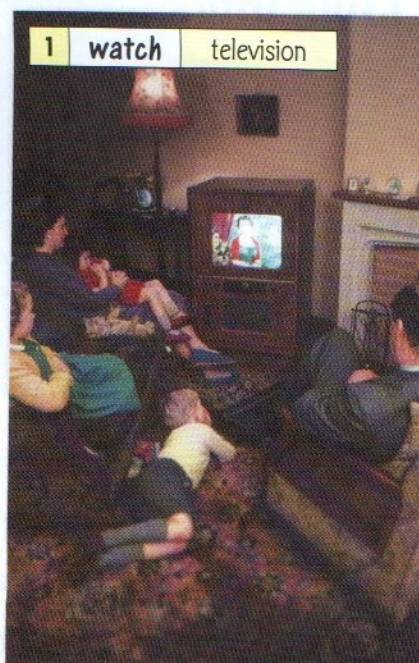
Student A Go to page 124.

Student B Go to page 125.

A When were cars invented?

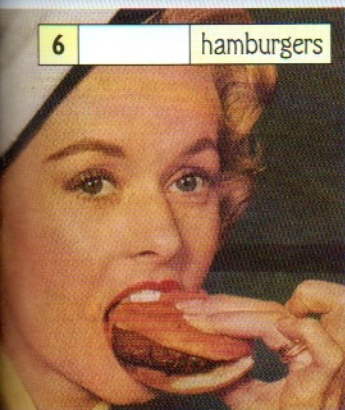
B In ...

A That's ... years ago.

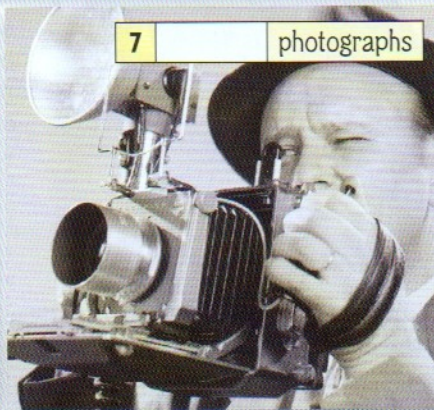




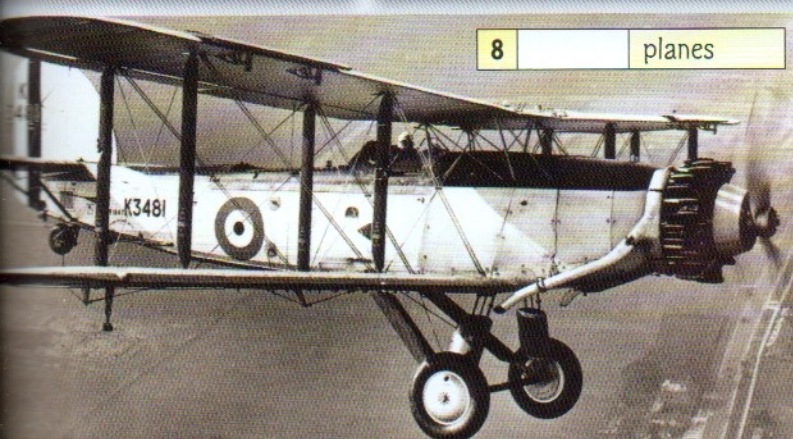
5 records



6 hamburgers



7 photographs



8 planes



9 bikes



10 jeans

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Write the Past Simple forms.

Present Simple	Past Simple
I live in Seattle.	I lived in Seattle.
He lives in Seattle.	
Do you live in Seattle?	
Does she live in Seattle?	
I don't live in Seattle.	
He doesn't live in Seattle.	

2 Complete these sentences.

The year 2000 was _____ years ago.

The year 1984 was _____ years ago.

►► Grammar Reference 8.1 and 8.2 p. 118

PRACTICE

Time expressions

1 Make correct time expressions.

in

on

at

_____ seven o'clock	_____ the morning
_____ Saturday	_____ Sunday evening
_____ night	_____ September
_____ 2002	_____ weekends
_____ the summer	_____ the nineteenth century

2 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions with *When ... ?* Use a time expression and *ago* in the answer.

When did you get up?

At seven o'clock, three hours ago.

When did this semester start?

In September, two months ago.

When did ... ?

- you get up
- you have breakfast
- you arrive at school
- you start learning English
- you start at this school
- this semester start
- you last use a computer
- you learn to ride a bicycle
- your parents get married
- you last have a coffee break

3 Tell the class about your day so far. Begin like this.

I got up at seven o'clock and had breakfast. I left the house at ...

PRACTICE

Three inventions

- 1 Look at the texts. What are the three inventions?
- 2 **CD2 34** The dates in the texts are *all* incorrect. Read and listen, and correct the dates.

Daguerre didn't start his experiments in the 1920s. He started them in the 1820s.

- 3 Make these sentences negative. Then give the correct answers.

1. Daguerre invented the bicycle.
He didn't invent the bicycle.
He invented the photograph.
2. Daguerre gave his idea to the French government.
3. Mary Anderson lived in New York City.
4. All cars had windshield wipers by 1916.
5. Leonardo da Vinci made the first bicycle.
6. Kirkpatrick Macmillan came from France.

CD2 35 Listen and check. Practice the stress and intonation.

- 4 Work with a partner. Make more incorrect sentences about the texts. Give them to a partner to correct.

Did you know that?

- 5 **CD2 36** Read and listen to the conversations. Then listen and repeat.

A Did you know that Marco Polo brought spaghetti back from China?

B Really? That's incredible!

A Well, it's true!

C Did you know that Napoleon was afraid of cats?

D No way! I don't believe it!

C Well, it's true!

- 6 Work with a partner.

Student A Go to page 124.

Student B Go to page 126.

Make similar conversations.



The photograph

LOUIS DAGUERRE FROM FRANCE



Louis Daguerre was a painter for the French opera. But he wanted to make a new type of picture. He started his experiments in the 1920s. Twelve years later he invented the photograph. He sold his idea to the French government

in 1935 and the government gave it to the world. Daguerre called the first photographs "daguerreotypes." They became popular very fast. By 1940, there were 70 daguerreotype studios in New York City.



The bicycle

KIRKPATRICK MACMILLAN FROM SCOTLAND

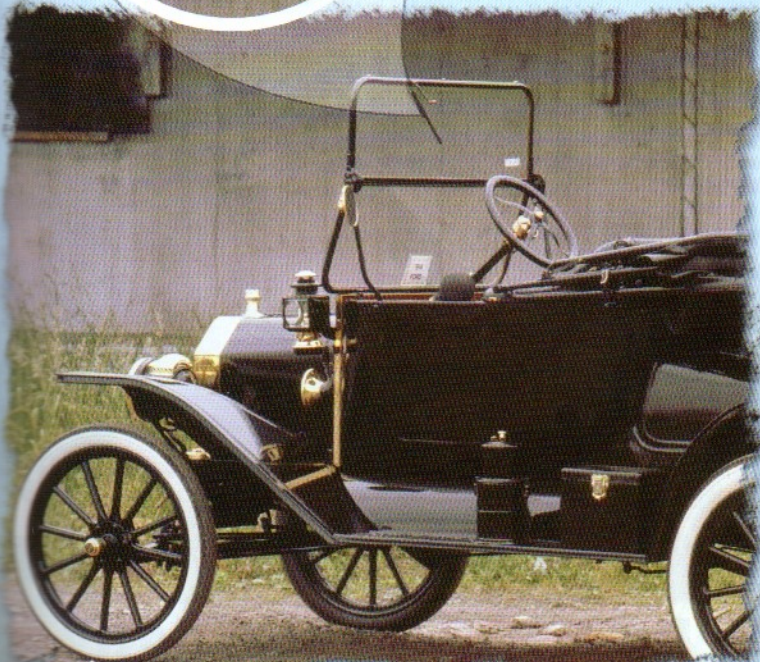
Long ago in 1540, Leonardo da Vinci drew a design for the modern bicycle. But the first person to make a bicycle was Kirkpatrick Macmillan in 1789. He lived in Scotland, so people didn't hear about his invention for a long time. Twenty years later, another bicycle came from France. In 1825 the bike became cheap and everyone could have one. Now people, especially women, could travel to the next town. It helped them find someone to marry!

2

The windshield wiper

MARY ANDERSON FROM THE UNITED STATES

Mary Anderson often visited New York City by car. In winter she noticed that when it rained or snowed, drivers got out of their cars all the time to clean their windows. In 1893 she began designing something to clean windows from inside the car. People, especially men, laughed at her idea. But they didn't laugh for long. She invented the windshield wiper in 1925. And by 1960 all American cars had them.



VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Spelling and silent letters

- 1 There are many silent letters in English words. Practice saying these words.

know /noʊ/

talk /tɔk/

thought /θɔt/

Cross out the silent letters in these words.

- | | |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1. walk | 7. buy |
| 2. listen | 8. hour |
| 3. widow | 9. flight |
| 4. write | 10. could |
| 5. eight | 11. wrong |
| 6. island | 12. daughter |

CD2 37 Listen and check. Practice saying the words.

- 2 Look at the phonetic spelling of these words from Exercise 1. Write the words.

- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. /wɔk/ | <u>walk</u> |
| 2. /baɪ/ | _____ |
| 3. /'lɪsən/ | _____ |
| 4. /wɪdɔv/ | _____ |
| 5. /raɪt/ | _____ |
| 6. /'aɪlənd/ | _____ |

- 3 Write the words. They all have silent letters.

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. /waɪt/ | <u>white</u> |
| 2. /bɔt/ | _____ |
| 3. /naɪt/ | _____ |
| 4. /'ænsər/ | _____ |
| 5. /bɪldɪŋ/ | _____ |
| 6. /'krɪsməs/ | _____ |

CD2 38 Listen and practice saying the words.

- 4 Read these sentences aloud.

- He bought his daughter eight white horses for Christmas.
- I know you know the answer.
- They walked and talked for hours and hours on the island.
- Listen and answer the questions.
- The girl took the wrong flight.

CD2 39 Listen and check.

▶▶ Phonetic symbols p. 134

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

How did you two meet?

- 1 Put the sentences in the correct order. There is more than one answer!

- ☐ They got married.
- ☐ They went out for a year.
- ☐ They fell in love.
- ☐ They had two children.
- ☒ Jack and Jill met at a party.
- ☐ They got engaged.

- 2 Look at the photos of two couples and read the introductions to their stories. What do you think happened next?

- 3 **CD2 40** Listen to them talking. Were your ideas correct?

- 4 Answer the questions about Neil and Claudia, and Eric and Lori.

1. Who was Stuart? Why didn't Claudia's friends like him?
2. What did Claudia's friends do?
3. Where did Eric and Lori's mothers meet?
4. Why didn't Eric and Lori want to meet?
5. Where did Neil first see Claudia?
6. What happened when both couples first met?
7. Which couple's wedding is next fall?

- 5 Who said these sentences? What was it about? Write **N**, **C**, **E**, or **L** in the boxes.

- a. _____ Our story is easy. We didn't do anything.
- b. _____ I didn't know anything about it!
- c. _____ I saw her picture and wrote to her.
- d. _____ I just thought, 'No way.'
- e. _____ Most of them went into my junk mailbox.
- f. _____ I took my sister with me.
- g. _____ ...immediately everything just clicked.
- h. _____ We all had a great time by the lake.

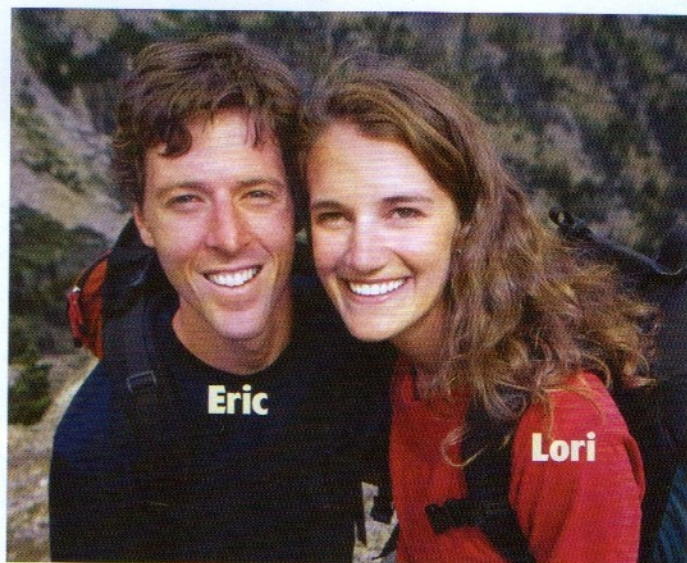
Speaking

- 6 Work with a partner. Imagine you are one of the people. Tell the story of how you met your boyfriend/girlfriend.
- 7 Look at these questions. Tell your partner about you and your family.
1. Are you married or do you have a girlfriend/boyfriend? How did you meet?
 2. When did your parents or grandparents meet? Where? How?



He's not your type!

Sometimes our friends don't like the people we date. Claudia's friends didn't like her boyfriend, so she broke up with him. Her friends wanted her to have a new boyfriend, so they...



Do mothers know best?

Parents usually want their children to meet a nice person and get married. Eric's mom wanted to help him meet someone, so...

►► **WRITING** About a friend p. 99

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Special occasions

1 Look at the list of days. Which are special? Match the special days with the pictures.

birthday	yesterday	Easter
Mother's Day	Halloween	New Year's Eve
today	Monday	Valentine's Day
weekend	Thanksgiving	Friday
wedding day	tomorrow	Christmas Day

2 Which days do you celebrate in your country? What do you do?

- make a cake
- give cards and presents
- have a meal
- go out with friends
- wear special clothes
- watch fireworks
- have a party
- give flowers or chocolates



3 Complete the conversations. What are the occasions?

1. Happy _____ to you.
Happy _____ to you.
Happy _____, dear Grandma,
Happy _____ to you.

2. A Did you get any _____ cards?
B Yes, I did. Listen to this.
*Roses are red. Violets are blue.
You are my _____
And I love you.*
A Wow! Do you know who it's from?
B No idea!

3. A Wake up, Mommy!
Happy _____!
B Thank you. Oh, what beautiful flowers, and a cup of coffee!
A And I made you a card! Look!
B It's beautiful. What a sweet boy!

4. A Congratulations!
B Thank you very much!
A When's the big day?
B Excuse me?
A When's your _____ day?
B June 26. Didn't you get your invitation?

5. A It's midnight! Happy _____ everybody!
B Happy _____!
C Happy _____!

6. A Thank goodness! It's Friday!
B Yeah. Have a nice _____!
A Same to you.

7. A Ugh! Work again. I hate Monday mornings!
B Me, too. Did you have a good _____?
A Yes, I did. It was great.

CD2 42 Listen and check.

Music of English

Work with a partner. Choose a conversation from Exercise 3. Learn it by heart. Pay attention to stress and intonation. Act it out for the class.

9

Food you like!

- Grammar:** Count and noncount nouns • *I like/I'd like* • *Some/any* • *Much/many*
- Vocabulary:** Food
- Everyday English:** Polite requests

STARTER What's your favorite • fruit? • vegetable? • drink?
Write your answers. Compare them with a partner, then with the class.

FOOD AND DRINK

Count and noncount nouns

- 1 Match the food and drink with the photos.
Which list has plural nouns, A or B?

A			
☒ p	apple juice	☐	pizza
☐	tea	☐	pasta
☐	coffee	☐	cheese
☐	milk	☐	fish
☐	soda	☐	chocolate

B			
☐	apples	☐	peas
☐	oranges	☐	tomatoes
☐	bananas	☐	hamburgers
☐	strawberries	☐	French fries
☐	carrots	☐	cookies

- 2 **CD3 2** Listen to Daisy and Tom talking about what they like and don't like. Put a check (✓) next to the food and drink that Daisy likes. What doesn't Tom like?

- 3 Who says these things? Write **D** or **T**.

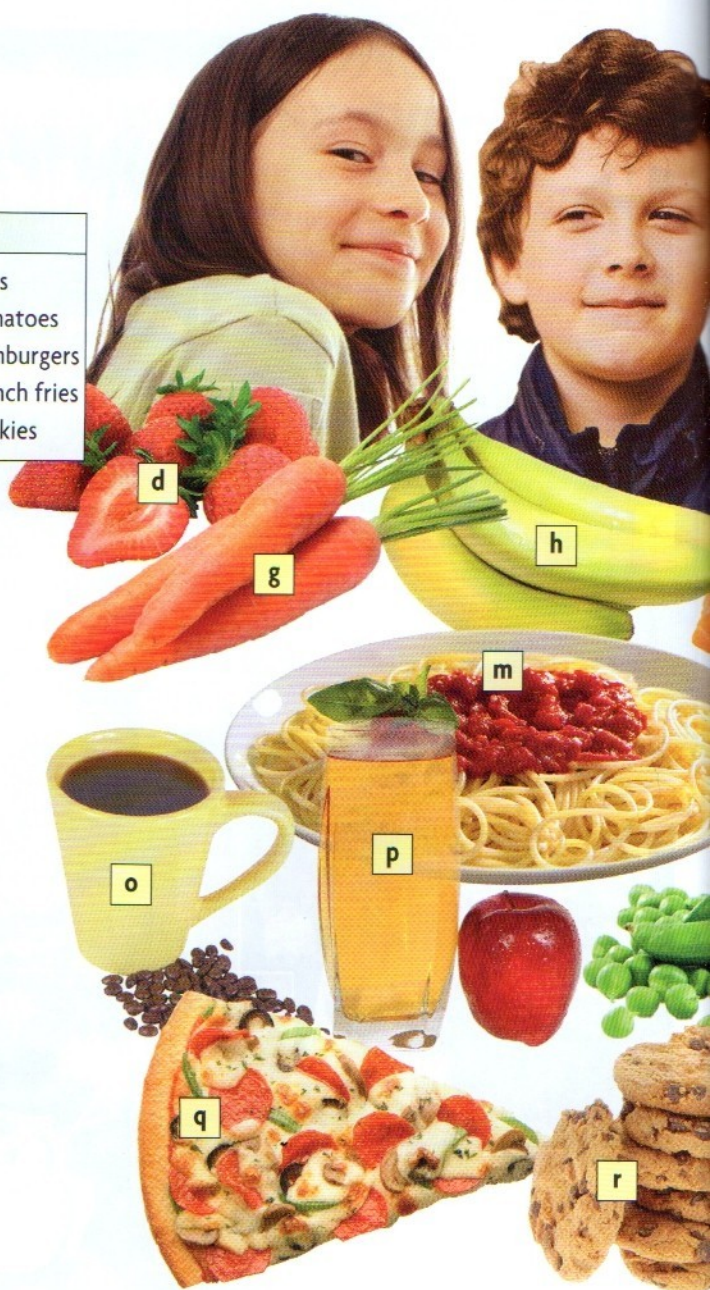
- _____ I **don't like** coffee at all.
- _____ I **like** orange juice, but I **don't like** oranges.
- _____ I **don't like** fruit **very much** at all.
- _____ I **really like** bananas.
- _____ I **like** all fruit.
- _____ I **like** vegetables, **especially** carrots and peas.

- 4 Talk about the lists of food and drink with a partner. What do you like? What do you really like? What don't you like?

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Look at the pairs of sentences. What is the difference?
Chocolate **is** delicious. | Strawberries **are** delicious.
Apple juice **is** good for you. | Apples **are** good for you.
- 2 Can we count apple juice? Can we count apples?

▶▶ Grammar Reference 9.1 p. 119



I like ... and I'd like ...

- 1 **CD3 3** Read and listen to the conversation between Tom and Daisy's mom.

M Hello, Tom. Would you like some milk or water?
T I'd like some juice, if that's OK.
M Of course. Would you like some orange juice?
T Yes, please. I'd love some.
M And would you like a chocolate chip cookie?
T Oh, yes, please! Thank you very much.
M You're welcome.

- 2 Practice the conversation in Exercise 1 with a partner. Then have similar conversations about other food and drink.

Would you like some tea?

No, thanks. I don't like tea very much.



GRAMMAR SPOT

- Look at the sentences. What is the difference?
 Do you like tea? | Would you like some tea?
 I like cookies. | I'd like a cookie. (I'd = I would)
 Which sentences mean *Do you want/I want ...*?
- Look at these sentences.
 I'd like some bananas. (plural noun)
 I'd like some mineral water. (noncount noun)
 We use *some* with both plural and noncount nouns.
- Look at these questions.
 Would you like some peas? | Are there any peas?
 Can I have some coffee? | Is there any coffee?
 We use *some*, not *any*, when we request and offer things.
 We use *any*, not *some*, in other questions and negatives.

► Grammar Reference 9.2 and 9.3 p. 119

PRACTICE

Questions and answers

- Choose *Would/Do you like ... ?* or *I/I'd like ...*.
 1. *Would/Do you like a tuna salad sandwich?*
 No, thanks. I'm not hungry.
 2. *Do/Would you like Ella?*
 Yes. She's very nice.
 3. *Do/Would you like a cold drink?*
 Yes, soda, please.
 4. Can I help you?
 Yes. *I/I'd like some stamps, please.*
 5. What sports do you do?
 Well, *I/I'd like swimming very much.*
 6. Excuse me, are you ready to order?
 Yes. *I/I'd like a steak, please.*

CD3 4 Listen and check. Practice with a partner.

- 2 **CD3 5** Listen and choose the correct answers.

- ☐ I like all sorts of fruit.
☐ Yes. I'd like some fruit, please.
- ☐ I'd like a book by John Grisham.
☐ I like books by John Grisham.
- ☐ I'd like a new bike.
☐ I like riding my bike.
- ☐ I'd like a cat but not a dog.
☐ I like cats, but I don't like dogs.
- ☐ I like Italian food, especially pasta.
☐ I'd like a plate of pasta.
- ☐ No, thanks. I don't like ice cream.
☐ I'd like some ice cream, please.

CD3 6 Listen and check. Practice with a partner.

a or some?

3 Write *a*, *an*, or *some*.

1. a strawberry
2. some fruit
3. _____ banana
4. _____ bread
5. _____ milk
6. _____ meat
7. _____ apple
8. _____ toast
9. _____ money
10. _____ dollar
11. _____ notebook
12. _____ homework

4 Write *a*, *an*, or *some*.



1. _____ egg



2. _____ eggs



3. _____ cookie



4. _____ cookies



5. _____ (cup of) coffee



6. _____ coffee



7. _____ ice cream cone



8. _____ ice cream

AT THE MARKET

some/any, much/many

1 What can you see at the market? Talk about the photo. Use *some/any* and not *much/not many*.

There's **some** cheese.

There **aren't** many cakes.

There **isn't** much bread.

There **aren't** any potatoes.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 We use *many* with count nouns in questions and negatives.
How many cakes are there? There **aren't** many cakes.
- 2 We use *much* with noncount nouns in questions and negatives.
How much bread is there? There **isn't** much bread.

►► Grammar Reference 9.4 p. 119

2 Read the shopping list. Ask and answer questions about what there is in the market.

Things to buy

- ☐ bread
- ☐ eggs
- ☐ milk
- ☐ butter
- ☐ apples
- ☐ cookies
- ☐ potatoes
- ☐ carrots
- ☐ strawberries
- ☐ tomatoes
- ☐ apple juice
- ☐ cake
- ☐ cheddar cheese
- ☐ tea

Is there any bread?

Yes, there is **some**.

How much is there?

There **isn't** much.

Is there any milk?

No, there **isn't**.

Are there any apples?

Yes, there **are**.

How many are there?

A lot.

3 **CD3 7** Tom and his mom are at the market. Listen and put a check (✓) next to the things they buy from the list above. What don't they buy?

4 Look at the audio script on page 110. Work in groups of three. Practice the conversation.



PRACTICE

much or many?

- Complete the questions using *much* or *many*.
 - How _____ people are there in the room?
 - How _____ gas is there in the car?
 - How _____ money do you have in your pocket?
 - How _____ eggs do we have?
 - How _____ milk is there in the refrigerator?
 - How _____ apples do you want?
- Choose an answer for each question in Exercise 1.
 - A kilo, please.
 - There are two cartons.
 - There are only two left.
 - Only five dollars.
 - Twenty. Nine men and eleven women.
 - The tank is full.
- Practice the questions and answers with a partner.

Check it

- Correct the sentences.
 - How ~~much~~ potatoes do you want?
How **many** potatoes do you want?
 - I don't like an ice cream.
 - Can I have a bread, please?
 - I'm hungry. I like a sandwich.
 - There isn't many milk left.
 - I'd like some fruits, please.
 - How many money do you have?
 - We have lot of homework today.

Role play

- Work with a partner. Make a shopping list each. Buy the things you need in the market. Take turns to be the seller.

Can I help you?

Yes, please. I'd like a/some ...

Here you are. Anything else?

Yes. Can I have a/some ...?

How much is that?

That's ..., please.

READING AND SPEAKING

Food around the world

- 1 Which food and drink comes from your country? Which foreign food and drink is popular in your country?
- 2 Can you identify any places or nationalities in the photos? What food can you see?
- 3 Read the text. Write the correct question heading for each paragraph.

Where does our food come from?

What do we eat?

How do we eat?

Find lines in the text that match the photos.

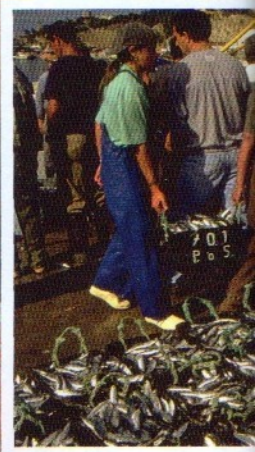
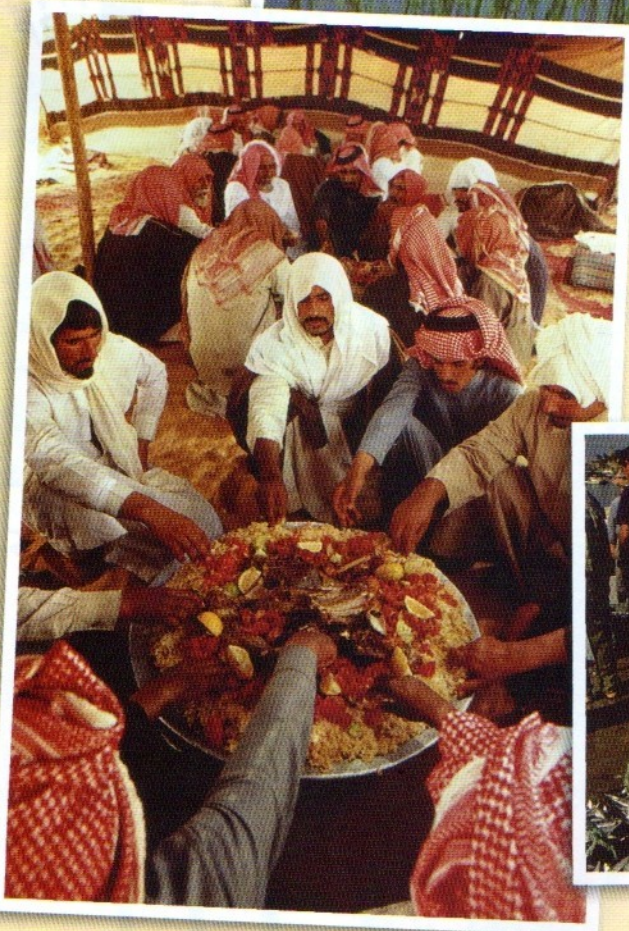
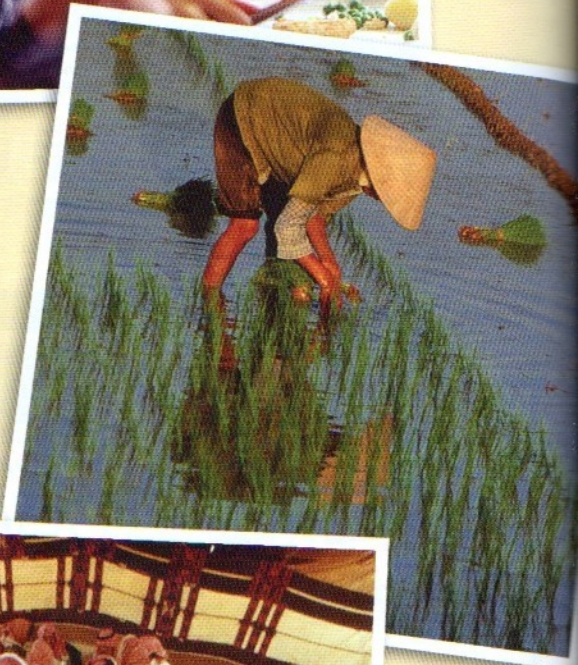
- 4 Answer the questions.
 1. When did human history start? Was it about 10,000 years ago or was it about 1 million years ago?
 2. Do they eat much rice in the north of China?
 3. Why do the Japanese eat a lot of fish?
 4. Where don't people eat much fish?
 5. Why do people in the middle of the U.S. eat more chicken and red meat?
 6. How many courses are there in China?
 7. How do people eat in the Middle East?
 8. Why can we now eat most things at any time of the year?

What do you think?

- 5 Work in small groups and discuss these questions about your country.
 1. What is a typical breakfast?
 2. What does your family have for breakfast?
 3. Is lunch or dinner the main meal of the day?
 4. What is a typical main meal?

Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph about meals in your country. Use your ideas from Exercise 5.



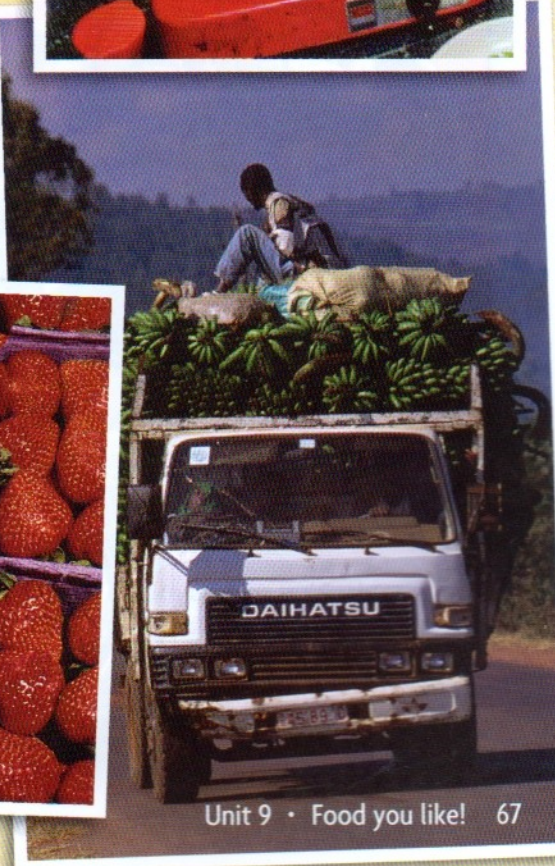
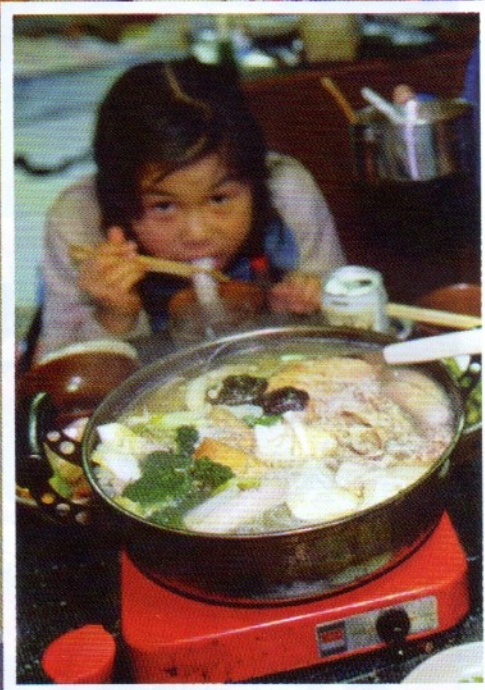
Food around the world

For **99%** of human history, people took their food from the world around them. They ate all that they could find, and then moved on. Then about 10,000 years ago, or for **1%** of human history, people learned to farm the land and control their environment.

The kind of food we eat depends on which part of the world we live in, or which part of our country we live in. For example, in the south of China they eat rice, but in the north they eat noodles. In Japan, people eat a lot of fish and other seafood. But in the middle of the United States, away from the sea, people don't eat so much fish, they eat more red meat and chicken. In Central Europe, people eat hundreds of different kinds of sausages.

In North America, Australia, and Europe there are two or more courses to every meal, and people eat with knives and forks. In China, all the food is together on the table, and they eat with chopsticks. In parts of India and the Middle East, people use their fingers and bread to pick up the food.

Nowadays it is possible to transport food easily from one part of the world to the other. We can eat what we like, when we like, at any time of the year. Bananas come from Central America or Africa; rice comes from California or Thailand; strawberries come from Chile or Mexico. Food is very big business. But people in poor countries are still hungry, and people in rich countries eat too much.



LISTENING AND SPEAKING

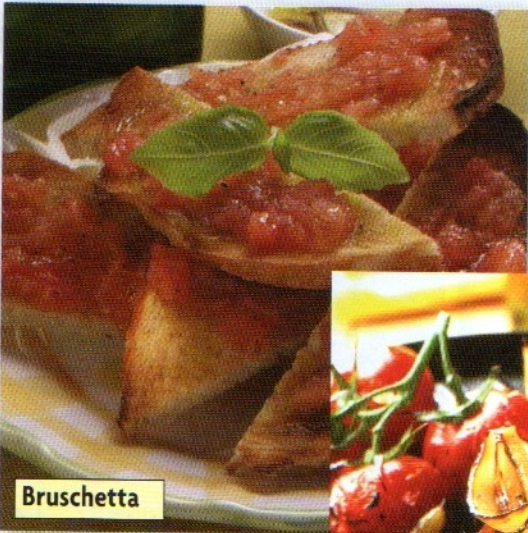
My favorite national food

- 1 Look at the photos of four national dishes. Which do you like? Match them with the countries.

Italy Argentina the U.S. Thailand

- 2 Find these things in the photos.

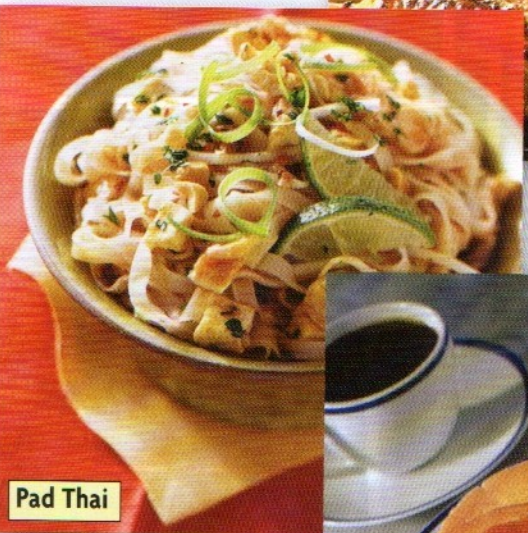
toast tomatoes chili peppers onions egg bacon pancakes beef noodles



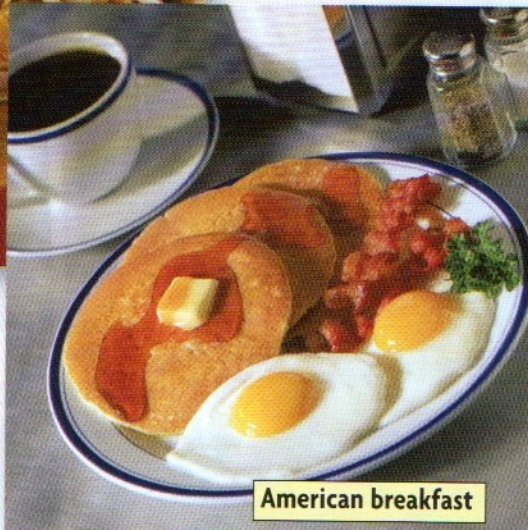
Bruschetta



Bife de chorizo



Pad Thai

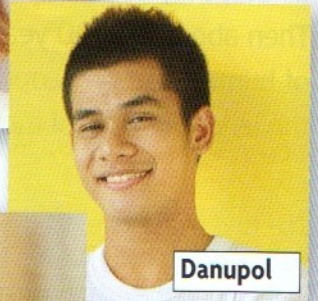


American breakfast

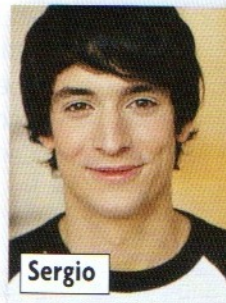
- 3 **CD3 8** Listen to the people. What nationality are they? Match them with their favorite food. What do they say about them?



Natalie



Danupol



Sergio



Giulia

- 4 Answer these questions about the people.

- Who . . . ?
 - travels a lot
 - goes to cafes to eat their favorite food
 - likes noodles
 - eats their favorite food at home
- How do you make pad thai?
- Where is the best place to eat pad thai?
- When does Natalie eat a big breakfast?
- How do you make bruschetta?
- Where is Giulia's favorite place to go?
- How often does Sergio eat beef?
- Who cooks it for him?

What do you think?

- What are *your* favorite national foods? When and where do you eat them?
- Describe them to your partner.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Polite requests



1 What can you see in the photograph?

2 Match the questions and responses.

1. Would you like some more carrots?
2. Could you pass the salt, please?
3. Could I have a glass of water, please?
4. Does anybody want more bread?
5. How would you like your coffee?
6. This is delicious! Can you give me the recipe?
7. Do you want help with the dishes?

Black, no sugar, please.
 Yes, of course. I'm glad you like it.
 Do you want bottled water or tap water?
 Yes, please. They're delicious.
 Yes, of course. Here you are.
 Yes, please. I'd love some.
 No, of course not. We have a dishwasher.

! We use *Can/Could I ... ?* to ask for things.
 Can I have a glass of water?
 Could I have a glass of water?
 We use *Can/Could you ... ?* to ask other people to do things for us.
 Can you give me the recipe?
 Could you pass the salt?

CD3 9 Listen and check.

Music of English

CD3 10 Listen. Notice how the voice goes up at the end of a request. Practice the intonation.

Could you pass the salt, please?

Could I have a glass of water, please?

Can you give me the recipe?

Can I see the menu, please?

3 Complete these requests with *Can/Could I ... ?* or *Can/Could you ... ?*

1. _____ have a cheese sandwich, please?
2. _____ tell me the time, please?
3. _____ take me to the station, please?
4. _____ see the menu, please?
5. _____ lend me some money, please?
6. _____ help me with my homework, please?
7. _____ borrow your dictionary, please?

4 Practice the requests with a partner. Give an answer for each request.

Can I have a cheese sandwich, please?

Yes, of course. That's \$1.75.

CD3 11 Listen and compare your answers.

10 Looking good!

Grammar: Present continuous • Whose?

Vocabulary: Clothes • Describing feelings

Everyday English: In a clothing store

STARTER 1 Look around the classroom. Can you see any of these clothes?

a hat a coat a sweater a shirt a T-shirt a dress a skirt a jacket
a suit shorts pants jeans shoes boots sneakers

2 What are you wearing?
What is your teacher wearing?
Tell the class.

I'm wearing blue jeans and a white T-shirt.

You're wearing a dress.

DESCRIBING PEOPLE

Present Continuous

1 Look at the photos. Describe the people.

Who ... ?

- is pretty
- is good-looking
- is handsome
- is tall
- isn't very tall

Who has ... ?

long
short
blonde
dark
gray

hair

blue
brown

eyes

Poppy's pretty.

Sofia has dark hair
and brown eyes.

2 What are they doing?

Who ... ?

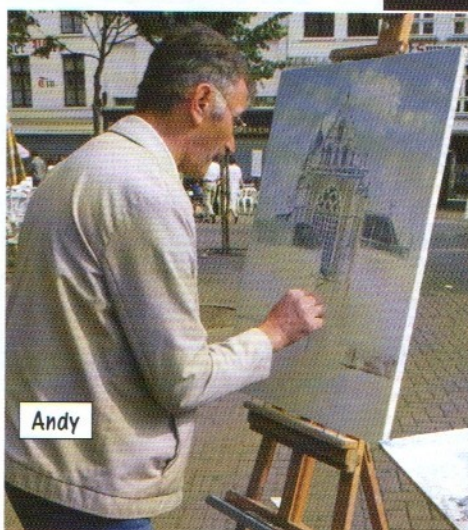
- is smiling
- is laughing
- is eating
- is standing up
- is drawing
- is reading
- is sitting down
- is using a computer
- is painting
- is walking

Ella's smiling.

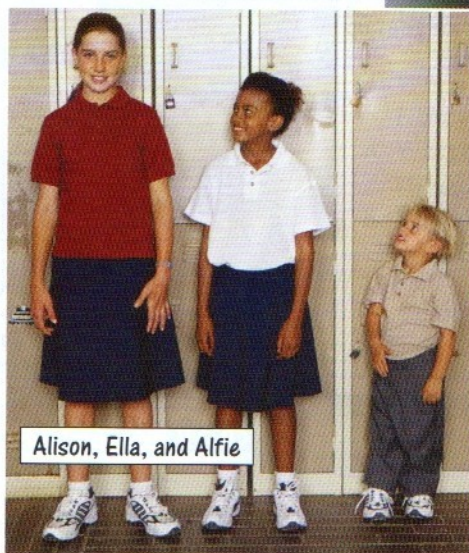
3 What are they wearing?

Andy's wearing glasses.

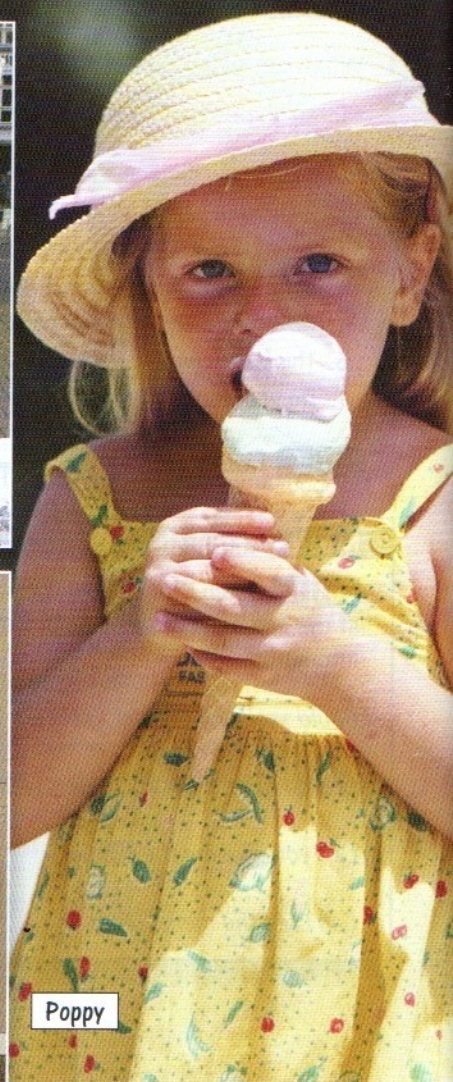
Simon's wearing a black jacket.



Andy



Alison, Ella, and Alfie



Poppy

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 *Am/is/are* + adjective describes people and things.

She **is** young/tall/pretty.

- 2 *Am/is/are* + verb + *-ing* describes activities happening **now**. Complete the chart.

I		learning English. sitting in a classroom. listening to the teacher.
You		
He/She		
We		
They		

This is the Present Continuous tense.
What are the questions and the negatives?

- 3 What is the difference between these sentences?

He speaks Spanish.
He's speaking Spanish.

►► Grammar Reference 10.1 and 10.2 p. 120

PRACTICE

Talking about you

- 1 Write sentences that are true for you at the moment.

1. I/wearing a jacket *I'm not wearing a jacket, I'm wearing a sweater.*
2. I/wearing jeans
3. I/standing up
4. I/looking out of the window
5. It/raining
6. teacher/writing
7. We/working hard
8. I/chewing gum

Tell a partner about yourself.

- 2 Work with a partner.

Student A Choose someone in the classroom, but don't say who.

Student B Ask Yes/No questions to find out who it is!

Is it a woman?

Yes, it is.

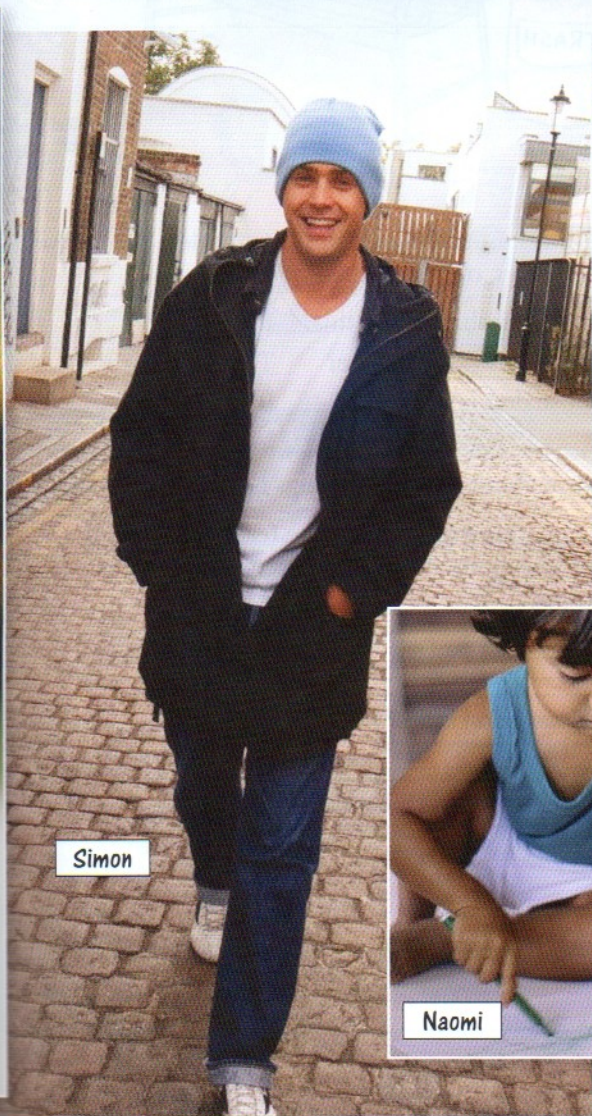
Is she sitting near the window?

No, she isn't.

Does she have blonde hair?

No, she doesn't.

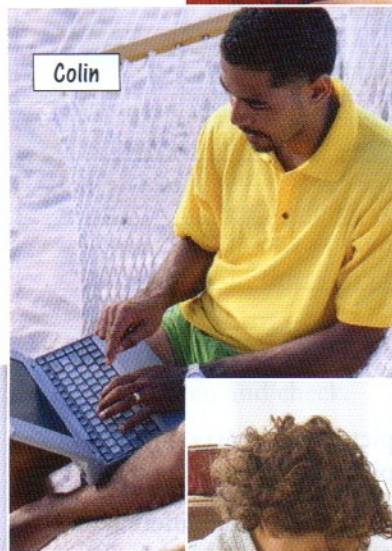
- 3 Look out the window. What can you see? Buildings? Hills? Fields? Can you see any people? What are they doing? Describe the scene.



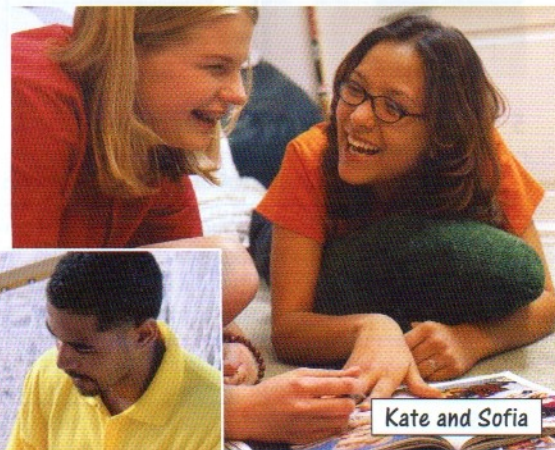
Simon



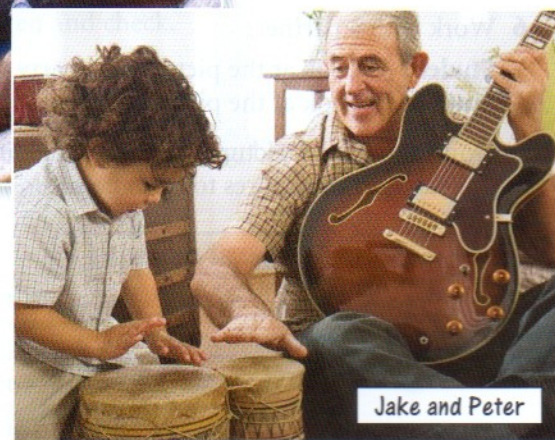
Naomi



Colin



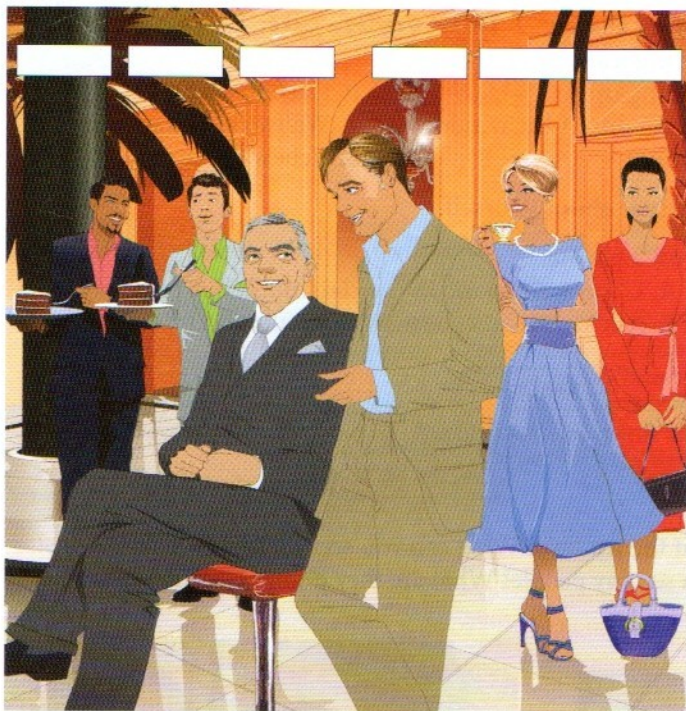
Kate and Sofia



Jake and Peter

Who's at the wedding?

- 4 **CD3 12** Alan is at Mike's wedding, but he doesn't know anyone. Mike is telling him about the other guests. Listen and write the people's names on the picture.



- 5 Listen again and complete the chart.

	Present Continuous	Present Simple
George	He's sitting down and he's talking to James.	He works in LA.
James		
Fiona		
Sue		
Bill and John		

Getting information

- 6 Work with a partner.

Student A Look at the picture of a party on page 124.

Student B Look at the picture of a party on page 126.

Don't show your picture! There are *ten* differences. Talk about the pictures to find them.

In my picture three people are dancing.

In my picture four people are dancing.

There's a woman with brown hair.

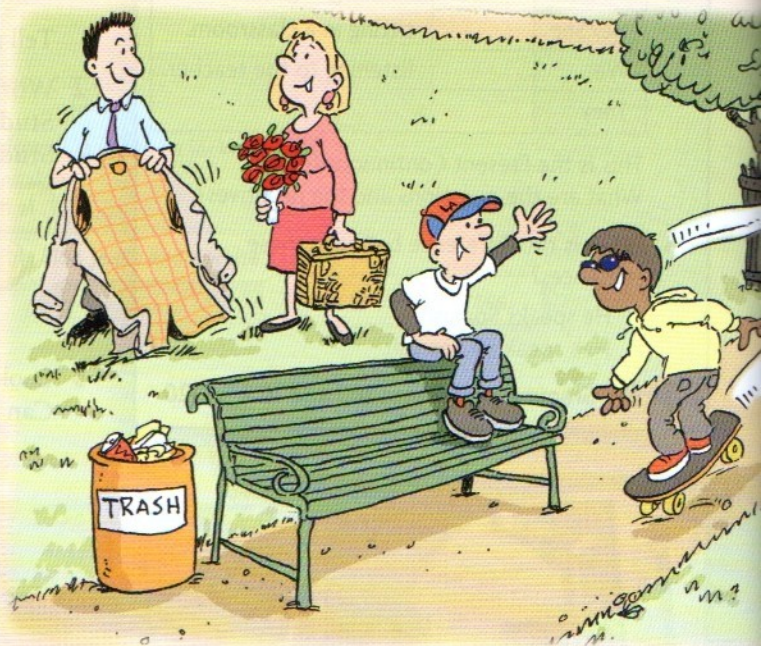
Is she wearing a black dress?

A DAY IN THE PARK

Whose is it?

- 1 Find these things in the picture.

a baseball cap a bicycle a dog flowers sneakers
a coat sunglasses an umbrella headphones
a soccer ball a skateboard



- 2 **CD3 13** Listen to the questions. Complete the answers with *his*, *hers*, or *theirs*.

- Whose baseball cap is this? It's _____.
- Whose flowers are these? They're _____.
- Whose dog is this? It's _____.

Practice the questions and answers with a partner. Then ask about the other things in Exercise 1.

- 3 Give something of yours to the teacher. Ask and answer questions about the objects. Use these possessive pronouns.

mine yours his hers ours theirs

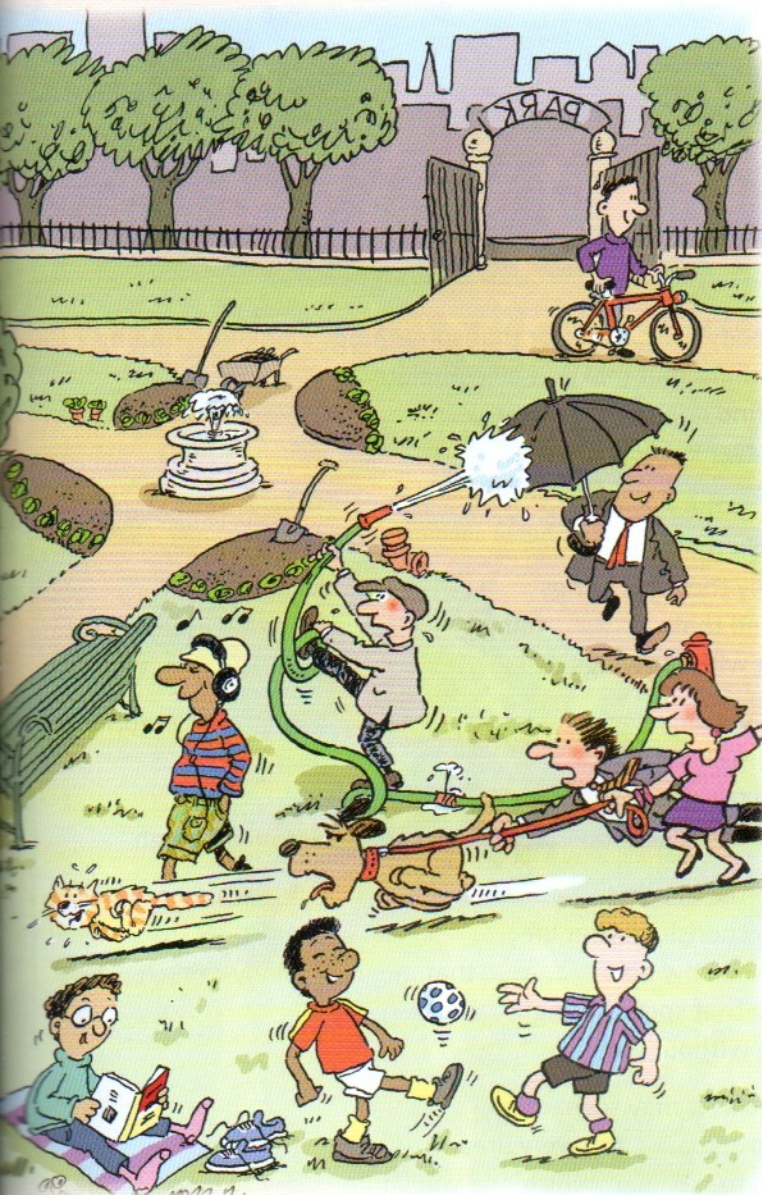
Whose jacket is this?

It's Kim's.

It's hers.

Is it yours, Kim?

Yes, it's mine.



GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the chart.

Subject	Object	Adjective	Pronoun
I	me	my	mine
You	you		
He	_____	his	_____
She	_____	_____	hers
We	us	our	_____
They	them	_____	_____

2 Whose ... ? asks about possession.

Whose hat is this? | It's mine. = It's my hat.
Whose is it?

3 Careful!

Who's your teacher? | Who's = Who is

► Grammar Reference 10.3 p. 120

PRACTICE

who's or whose?

- Choose the correct word. Compare your answers with a partner.
 - I like *your / yours* house.
 - Ours / Our* house is smaller than *their / theirs*.
 - And *their / theirs* backyard is bigger than *our / ours*, too.
 - My / Mine* children are older than *her / hers*.
 - Whose / Who's* talking to *your / yours* sister?
 - This book isn't *my / mine*. Is it *your / yours*?
 - "*Whose / Who's* dictionary is this?" "It's *his / him*."
 - "*Whose / Who's* going to the party tonight?" "I'm not."
 - "*Whose / Who's* dog is running around *our / ours* backyard?"
- CD3 14** Listen to the sentences. If the word is **Whose?** shout 1! If the word is **Who's?** shout 2!

Who's on the phone?

2

Whose is it?

1

What a mess!

- CD3 15** The house is a mess! Complete the conversation. Listen and check.

A _____ tennis racket _____ this?

B It's _____.

A What's it doing here?

B I'm _____ tennis this afternoon.



The Present Continuous can also describe activities happening in the near future.

I'm **playing** tennis this afternoon.

We're **having** pizza for dinner tonight.

- Make more conversations with a partner.
 - sunglasses ... these? / John's / going to the beach later
 - shoes ... these? / Mary's / going dancing tonight
 - suitcase ... this? / mine / going on vacation tomorrow
 - coat ... this? / Jane's / going for a walk soon
 - plane ticket ... this? / Jo's / flying to Houston this afternoon
 - glasses ... these? / ours / having a party tonight

CD3 16 Listen and check.

Check it

- Correct the sentences.
 - Alice is tall and she has long, black hairs.
 - Who's boots are these?
 - I'm wearing a jeans.
 - Look at Roger. He stands next to Jeremy.
 - He's work in a bank. He's the manager.
 - What is drinking Suzie?
 - Whose that man in the backyard?
 - Where you going tonight?
 - What you do after school today?

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Looking for that something

- 1 What makes you happy? Think of five things that make you happy. Write them down. Compare them with a partner.
- 2 What makes you happiest? Choose one thing only. Compare with the class.
- 3 **CD3 17** Close your books and listen to the song.
- 4 Read the song by an Irish band called Westlife.



Can you match these words from the song and their meanings?

joy
to cherish
to deny
solitary
the sunrise

to love
happiness
when the sun comes up
to say no to something
alone, lonely

- 5 **CD3 17** Look at the words on the right. Choose the correct word to complete the lines. Listen again and check.

What do you think?

- In the song, what does “flying without wings” mean?
- Did you find any of the things on your list in the song?

Everybody's _____ for that something
One thing that makes it all complete
You find it in the strangest _____
Places you never knew it could be

Some find it in the faces of their _____
Some find it in their lover's _____
Who can deny the joy it brings
When you find that _____ thing
You're flying without wings

Some find it sharing every _____
Some in their solitary lives
You find it in the words of others
A simple line can make you _____ or cry

You find it in the deepest _____
The kind you cherish all your life
And when you know how _____ that means
You've found that special thing
You're flying without wings

So impossible as it may seem
You've got to _____ for every dream
'Cause who's to _____ which one you let go
Would have made you complete

Well, for me it's waking up beside _____
To watch the sunrise on your face
To know that I can say I _____ you
At any given time or place

It's little things that only I know
Those are the things that make you _____
And it's like flying without wings
'Cause you're my special _____
I'm flying without wings

You're the place my life _____
And you'll be where it ends
I'm flying without wings
And that's the joy you _____
I'm flying without wings

looking / finding

places / houses

parents / children

hair / eyes

special / interesting

breakfast / morning

dance / laugh

friendship / water

many / much

fight / sleep
say / know

her / you

like / love

mine / theirs

person / thing

begins / stops

take / bring

Flying without wings



Speaking

- 6 Read the questionnaire and answer the questions. Stand up. Ask students in the class the questions. Find people with the same answers as yours.

My favorite things

1. What's your favorite **food**?

2. What's your favorite **drink**?

3. What's your favorite **color**?

4. What are your favorite **clothes**?

5. What are your favorite **shoes**?

6. Who's your favorite **singer or band**?

7. What are your favorite things to do
on weekends?

8. Who's your favorite person?

9. Where's your favorite **place**?

10. Who's your favorite **movie star or actor**?

- 7 Tell the class which people like the same things as you.

Johann and I both like blue.

Stella and I both like sneakers.

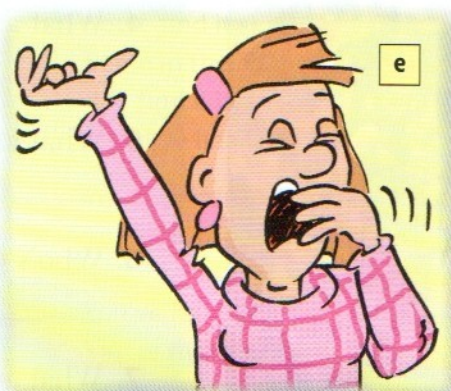
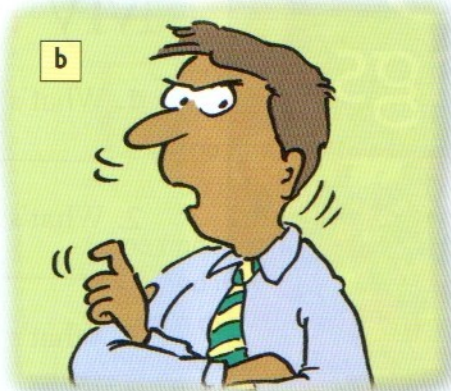
►► WRITING Describing people p. 101

VOCABULARY

Describing feelings

1 Match the feelings to the pictures.

bored tired worried excited annoyed interested



2 Match the feelings and reasons to make sentences.

	Feelings		Reasons
I am	bored tired worried excited annoyed interested	because	I'm going on vacation tomorrow. we have a good teacher. I worked very hard today. I can't find my keys. I have nothing to do. I want to go to the party but I can't.

! Some adjectives can end in both **-ed** and **-ing**.
I was **interested** in the book.
The book was **interesting**.
The students were **bored**.
The lesson was **boring**.

3 Complete each sentence with the correct adjective.

- excited**
exciting Life in New York is very ...
The football fans were very ...
- tired**
tiring The marathon runners were very ...
That game of tennis was very ...
- annoyed**
annoying The child's behavior was really ...
The teacher was ... when nobody did the homework.
- worried**
worrying The news is very ...
Everybody was very ... when they heard the news.

4 Answer your teacher's questions using adjectives from Exercises 1 and 2.

Did you like doing Exercise 2?

No, we didn't. It was very boring!

How did you feel?

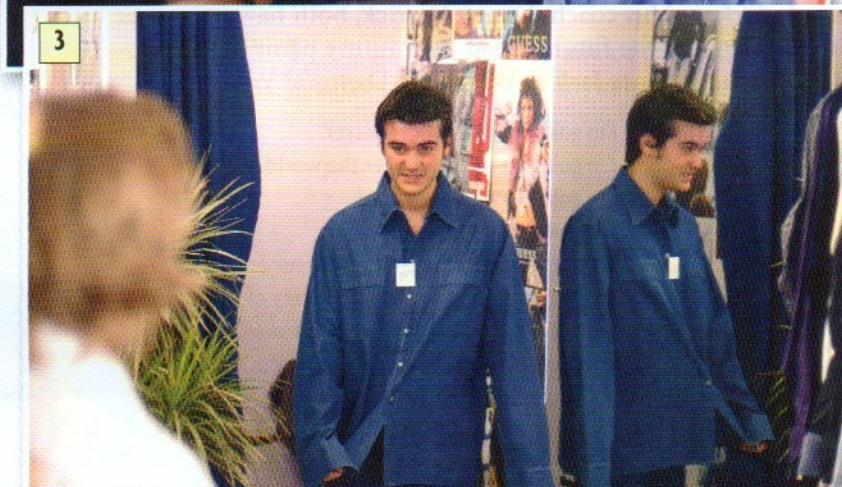
Very bored!

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

In a clothing store

- 1 Read the lines of a conversation in a clothing store. Who says them, the customer or the salesperson? Write **C** or **SP**.

- a. SP Can I help you?
- b. C Oh, yes. I like that one much better. Can I try it on?
- c. ____ \$39.99. How do you want to pay?
- d. ____ Yes, please. I'm looking for a shirt to go with my new jeans.
- e. ____ Blue.
- f. ____ Yes, of course. The fitting rooms are over there.
... Is the size OK?
- g. ____ OK. I'll take the green. How much is it?
- h. ____ Can I pay by credit card?
- i. ____ What color are you looking for?
- j. ____ No, it isn't the right blue.
- k. ____ No, it's a bit too big. Do you have a smaller size?
- l. ____ That's the last blue one we have, I'm afraid. But we have it in green.
- m. ____ Well, what about this one? It's a bit darker blue.
- n. ____ What about this one? Do you like this?
- o. ____ Credit card's fine. Thank you very much.



- 2 Can you match any lines with the photos?

Photo 1 **SP** Can I help you?

C Yes, please. I'm looking for a shirt to go with my new jeans.

- 3 Work with a partner and put the lines in the correct order.

CD3 18 Listen and check.

Music of English

Practice the conversation with your partner.
Pay attention to stress and intonation.

- 4 Make more conversations in a clothing store.
Buy some different clothes.

11

Life's an adventure!

- 🎧 **Grammar:** *Going to future* • Comparatives and superlatives
- 🎧 **Vocabulary:** Weather
- Everyday English:** Making suggestions

- STARTER**
- How many sentences can you make?
 - Make similar true sentences about you. Tell the class.

I'm going to Brazil
I went to Brazil

soon.
when I was a student.
next month.
in a year.
two years ago.
when I retire.

FUTURE PLANS

going to

- 1 Jack and his coach, Danny Carrick, both have plans for the future. Read their future plans. Which do you think are Jack's? Which are Danny's? Write J or D.

- J I'm going to be a soccer player.
- I'm going to travel all over the world.
- I'm going to train very hard.
- I'm going to try new things.
- I'm going to play for a Major League Soccer team.
- I'm not going to marry until I'm very old.
- I'm not going to stay at home and watch TV.
- I'm going to learn to scuba dive.
- I'm going to write a book.
- I'm going to be famous.

CD3 19 Listen and check. Were you correct?

- 2 Talk first about Jack, then about Danny. Use the ideas in Exercise 1.

Jack's going to be a soccer player.

He's going to ...

He isn't going to ...

Which two plans are the same for both of them?

They're both going to ...

- 3 **CD3 20** Listen and repeat the questions and answers about Jack.

Is he going to be a soccer player?

Yes, he is.

What's he going to do?

Train very hard.

When I grow up...

Jack, age 11



Danny Carrick, age 58

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 The verb *to be + going to* expresses future plans. Complete the chart.

I		going to leave tomorrow.
You		
He/She		
We		
They		

What are the questions and the negatives?

- 2 Is there much difference between these two sentences?
I'm leaving tomorrow. I'm going to leave tomorrow.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 11.1 p. 121

PRACTICE

Questions about Jack

- 1 With a partner, make more questions about Jack. Then match them with an answer.

Questions

- Why/he/train very hard?
- How long/play soccer?
- When/marry?
- How many children/have?
- Who/teach to play?

Answers

- Until he's 35.
- Two.
- His sons.
- Not until he's very old—about 25!
- Because he wants to be a soccer player.

- 2 **CD3 21** Listen and check. Practice the questions and answers with your partner.

Questions about you

- 3 Are you going to do any of these things after class? Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- watch TV
- have coffee
- catch a bus
- eat in a restaurant
- meet some friends
- cook a meal
- go shopping
- wash your hair
- do your homework

Are you going to watch TV?

Yes, I am./No, I'm not.

- 4 Tell the class some of the things you and your partner *are* or *are not* going to do.

We're both going to have coffee.

I'm going to catch a bus, but Anna isn't. She's going to walk home.

EXCITING VACATIONS

Comparative adjectives

1 What is your perfect vacation? Which do you prefer?

- a beach vacation
- a ski trip
- a hiking vacation in the mountains
- a sightseeing vacation in a city

2 Match an adjective with its opposite. Which adjectives do you think best describe the vacations in Exercise 1?

cheap relaxing boring safe

stressful dangerous exciting expensive

3 **CD3 22** Listen to Tony and Amanda talking about their next vacation. Which vacation do you think they will choose? Why?

Much more than...

4 Write the correct form of the adjectives.

1. A I think a vacation in Los Angeles is cheaper (cheap) than a vacation in Miami.

B I don't think so. Los Angeles is much more expensive (expensive)

2. A I think Boston is _____ (small) and _____ (old) than New York.

B Well, you're right, Boston is _____ (small), but it's *not* _____ (old).

3. A A ski trip is going to be _____ (exciting) than hiking in the mountains.

B I don't agree. Hiking is much _____ (exciting).

4. A I think mountain climbing is much _____ (dangerous) than sky diving.

B Really? I think they're both very frightening. I don't think one is _____ (safe) than the other.

5. A Which city do you think is _____ (good), Mexico City or Buenos Aires?

B I don't know. I think they're both great. I don't think one is _____ (exciting) than the other.

CD3 23 Listen and check. Practice the conversations with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete these comparatives. What are the rules?

I'm _____ (old) than you.

Your class is _____ (noisy) than my class.

Your car was _____ (expensive) than my car.

2 What are the comparatives of the adjectives in the boxes?

3 The comparatives of *good* and *bad* are irregular.

What are they?

good _____ bad _____

▶▶ Grammar Reference 11.2 p. 121

1



Coral Club Resort

Barbados, Caribbean Sea

- Built in 1952
- 85 rooms
- \$420 to \$710 a night
- one bar and restaurant
- 40-minute taxi ride from airport



2



Palm Hotel Resort

Maldives, Indian Ocean

- Built in 1998
- 98 rooms
- \$200 to \$600 a night
- two bars and two restaurants
- 50-minute boat ride from airport



3



Bati Island Resort

Fiji, Pacific Ocean

- Built in 1992
- 7 rooms
- \$660 to \$770 a night
- one bar and restaurant
- one hour seaplane flight from airport



PRACTICE

The biggest and best!

- 1 Complete the conversations using the superlative form of the adjective.
1. Mount Everest is a very big mountain.
Yes, it's the biggest mountain in the world.
 2. The Lakers are a very famous basketball team.
Yes, I think _____ in the world.
 3. The Ritz is a very expensive hotel.
Yes, _____ in the city.
 4. New York's a very cosmopolitan city.
Yes, _____ in the world.
 5. Brad Pitt is a very popular movie star.
Yes, _____ in America.
 6. Miss Smith is a very funny teacher.
Yes, _____ in our school.
 7. Anna is a very intelligent student.
Yes, _____ in the class.
 8. This is a very easy exercise.
Yes, _____ in the book.

CD3 24 Listen and check. What other information do you hear?

Talking about your class

- 2 How well do you know the other students in your class? Describe them using these adjectives and others.

tall small old young intelligent funny

I think Ivan is the tallest in the class. He's taller than Karl.

Sofia's the youngest.

I'm the most intelligent!

Check it

- 3 Correct the sentences.
1. I'm the most young in the class.
 2. She's taller and most intelligent that her brother.
 3. Last week I was much busyer than this week.
 4. My homework is the worse in the class. Yours is the most good.
 5. Yesterday was more warm than today.
 6. Is going to rain and be more cold tomorrow.
 7. Are you going wash your hair this evening?
 8. This exercise is most difficult in the book.

PARADISE ISLANDS

Superlative adjectives

- 1 Look at the pictures of some of the world's most relaxing vacation resorts on page 80. Which one do you like best?
- 2 Read the information about them. Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false sentences. What is the same about the true (✓) sentences?
1. The Coral Club is cheaper than the Palm Hotel.
 2. Bati Island is the most expensive resort.
 3. The Coral Club is newer than the Palm Hotel.
 4. The Palm Hotel is the newest resort.
 5. The Coral Club is bigger than the Palm Hotel.
 6. The Palm Hotel is the biggest resort.
 7. Bati Island is the smallest resort.
 8. Bati Island is nearer to the airport than the Palm Hotel.
 9. The Coral Club is the nearest to the airport.
 10. Bati Island is the farthest from the airport.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Complete these superlative sentences. What's the rule?
- The Palm Hotel is the _____ (cheap).
Bati Island is the _____ (expensive).
- 2 Dictionaries often show irregular comparative and superlative forms of adjectives. Look at this:
- good** /gʊd/ adj. (**better**, **best**)
- Complete these irregular forms:
- bad** /bæd/ adj. (_____, _____)
far /fɑː/ adj. (_____, _____)

▶▶ Grammar Reference 11.2 p. 121

READING AND SPEAKING

Born free

- 1 Which of these sports do you think is the most dangerous? Put them in order 1–6. 1 is the *most* dangerous. Compare your ideas with a partner and then the class.

_____ skiing	_____ soccer	_____ mountain climbing
_____ windsurfing	_____ golf	_____ scuba diving

- 2 Match a verb with a noun or phrase.

jump	a medal
take	over a wall
win	underwater
swim	a record
break	oxygen
breathe	a class

- 3 Look at the photos of Tanya Streeter and David Belle. Do you know what the sport is? Work in two groups.

Group A Read about Tanya.

Group B Read about David.

Answer the questions about your person.
Check your answers with your group.

1. Where did she/he grow up?
 2. What did she/he like doing as a child?
 3. How did she/he become interested in the sport?
 4. How does she/he feel when he/she does the sport?
 5. How dangerous is the sport?
 6. Does she/he teach the sport?
 7. What did she/he do last year?
 8. What are her/his future plans?
- 4 Work with a partner from the other group.
Compare Tanya and David, using your answers.

Speaking

- 5 **Group A** Make questions to ask David.

1. Why/like the countryside?
2. What/like doing at school?
3. What sport/invent?
4. What/do in Lisses?
5. What/do next?

Group B Make questions to ask Tanya.

1. What/like doing as a child?
 2. When/take a diving class?
 3. How long/can/swim underwater?
 4. What record/break?
 5. What/do next?
- 6 Work with a partner from the other group.
Interview each other.



Free diving

As a child, Tanya Streeter always loved swimming in the sea – she grew up in the Cayman Islands in the Caribbean. She could always dive the deepest for seashells. But she didn't know then that she could dive deeper than anyone else in the world.

Tanya discovered her diving abilities in 1997, when she took a class in free diving. Free diving is a new sport. It's very dangerous, because you dive with no oxygen. There were only men in the class and no one wanted to dive with her because she was a girl. But her class was surprised when they saw how long she could swim underwater. Her teachers immediately wanted to train her. A few months later, Tanya started breaking records. She can swim underwater for nearly six minutes with just one breath! Last year she broke the world free diving record. She dove 121 meters with one breath.

She says: "At the bottom of the sea I'm calm. I love the peace and quiet down there. Coming up again is very difficult. You can't think about the pain!"

I'm not planning to break any more records for a while. I'm going to wait and see if anyone breaks my last record! In the future I'm going to teach free diving and work for sea-life conservation."



Free running

David Belle grew up in the countryside, and he always loved the feeling of freedom there. He liked running, jumping, and climbing trees in the woods when he was a child. At the age of nine, he and his family went to live in Lisses, a town outside Paris. But he continued to jump and climb there. He loved doing gymnastics at school.

As a teenager in 1989, David invented the sport of Le Parkour or "free running." The idea of Le Parkour is to find new and often dangerous ways to travel across the town. The runners or "traceurs" work in groups. They run and jump over walls, roofs, and buildings—everything! They try to move like cats. David and his friend Sebastian spent ten years in Lisses practicing their moves and jumps, and teaching other people. Last year they were on television for the first time. David says that Le Parkour is an art and a philosophy, not a sport. They are not trying to win medals. They just want to learn new moves and do them well. They like to feel free.

David says: "We do it because we need to move. We are going to take our art to the world and show people how to move. And we are going to go where no human ever went before."



VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

The weather

1 Match the words and symbols.

sunny rainy windy snowy cloudy foggy



Which symbols can the following adjectives go with?

hot warm cold cool wet dry

2 **CD3 25** Listen and complete the answers.

- A What's the weather like today?
 B It's _____ and it's very _____.
 A What was it like yesterday?
 B Oh, it was _____ and _____.
 A What's it going to be like tomorrow?
 B I think it's going to be _____.

! The question *What ... like?* asks for a description.
 What's the weather like? = Tell me about the weather.

Practice the questions and answers. Ask and answer about the weather where *you* are.

3 Work with a partner. Find out about the weather around the world yesterday.

Student A Look at the information on this page.

Student B Go to page 126.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

WORLD WEATHER

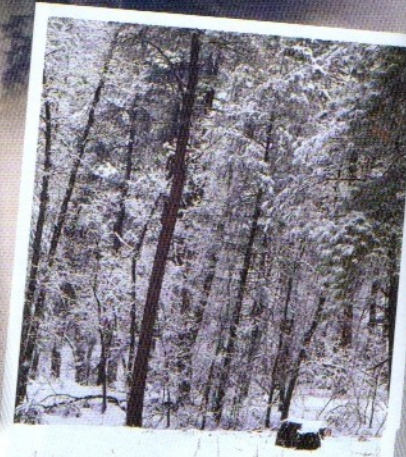
NOON YESTERDAY

		°F
Atlanta	S	86
Boston		
Brasília	S	75
Denver		
Hong Kong	R	60
London		
Los Angeles	Fg	70
Mexico City		
San Francisco	Fg	50
São Paulo		
Seattle	R	42
Toronto		
Vancouver	Sn	40

S = sunny
 C = cloudy
 Fg = foggy
 R = rainy
 Sn = snowy

What was the weather like in Atlanta?

It was sunny and hot.
 Eighty-six degrees.



4 Which city was the hottest? Which was the coldest?
 Which month do you think it is?

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Making suggestions

- 1 Make a list of things you can do in good weather and things you can do in bad weather. Compare your list with a partner.

Good weather 	Bad weather 
Go to the beach	Watch TV

- 2 **CD3 26** Read and listen to the beginning of two conversations. Complete B's suggestions.

1 A It's a beautiful day! What should we do?
B Let's _____!

2 A It's raining again! What should we do?
B Let's _____ and _____.

- !** 1 We use *should* to ask for and make suggestions.
What should we do? = What do you want to do?
Should we go swimming? = I suggest that we go swimming.
- 2 We use *Let's* to make a suggestion for everyone.
Let's go! = I suggest that we all go. (Let's = Let us)
Let's have a pizza!

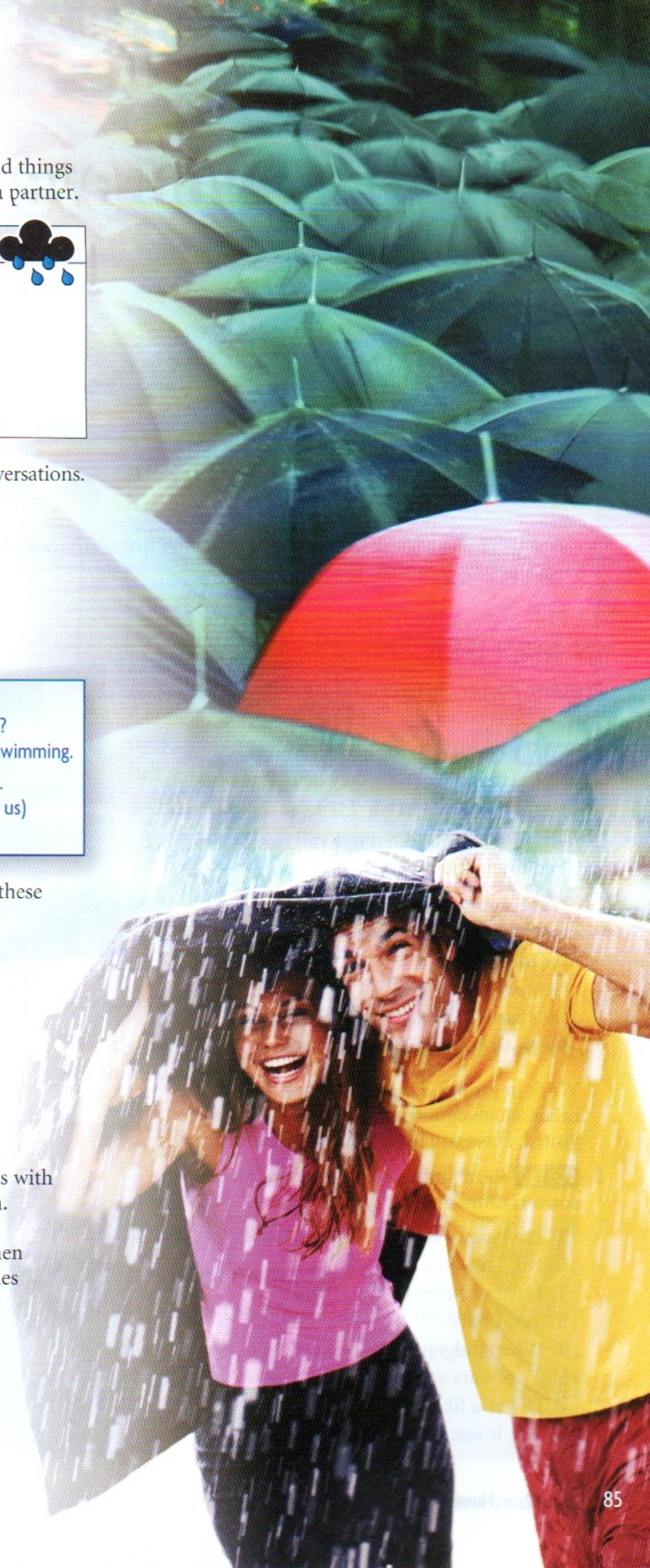
- 3 Continue the two conversations in Exercise 2 with these lines. Put them in the correct order a–c.

- ☐ Well, let's go to the beach.
- ☐ OK. What movie do you want to see?
- ☒ **1 a** Oh no! It's too hot to play tennis.
- ☐ But we watched a DVD last night.
- ☐ I'll get my bathing suit.
- ☐ Well, let's go to the movies.

CD3 27 Listen and check. Practice the conversations with your partner. Pay attention to stress and intonation.

- 4 Have more conversations suggesting what to do when the weather is good or bad. Use your lists of activities in Exercise 1 to help you.

▶▶ WRITING Writing a postcard **p. 102**



Everyday English: At the airport

2 Put a check (✓) next to the countries that you have visited.

Present Perfect + *ever* and *never*

2 CD3 29 Read and listen to Ryan's answers. Then listen and repeat.

I've been to Paris. (I've = I have)

I haven't been to Barcelona.

I've been to Italy.

I've never been to Venice.

She's been to Mexico. (She's = She has)

She hasn't been anywhere in Europe!

Work in groups. Look at the flags. Tell each other which countries you have or haven't visited. Have you been to any other countries?

3 CD3 30 Read and listen to Tara and Steve's conversation. Practise with a partner.

T Have you ever been to Barcelona?

S No, I haven't.

T Have you ever been to Paris?

S Yes, I have.

T When did you go?

S Two years ago.

T Did you like it?

S Yes, it was beautiful.



4 Write down the names of four cities in your country or another country that you have visited. Have similar conversations with your partner.

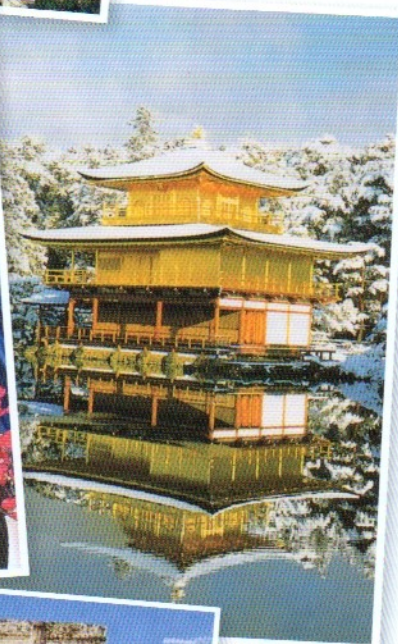
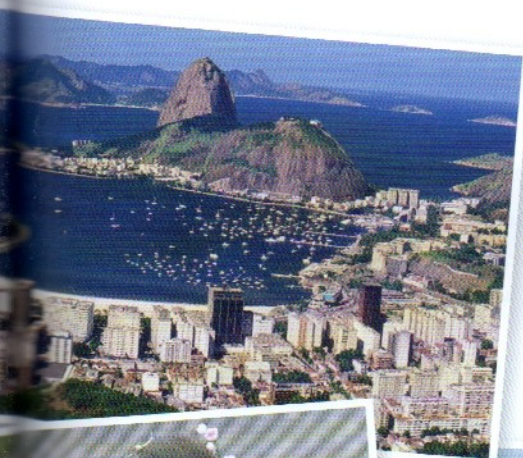
5 Tell the class about your partner.

Maria's been to Seoul. (Maria's = Maria has)

She went there two years ago.

But she hasn't been to Tokyo.
She's never been to Tokyo.

(She's = She has)



GRAMMAR SPOT

1 We use the Present Perfect to talk about experiences in our lives.

Have you ever (at any time in your life) been to Toronto?

2 We use the Past Simple to say exactly *when* something happened.

When did you go to Toronto?

I went there two years ago.
in 2006.

3 We make the Present Perfect tense with *has/have* + the past participle. Complete the chart.

	Affirmative	Negative	
I			been to Toronto.
You			
We			
They			
He			
She			
It			

4 Write *ever* and *never* in the right place in these sentences.

Has he _____ been to Tokyo?

He's _____ been to Tokyo.

► Grammar Reference 12.1 p. 121

PRACTICE

Past participles

1 Here are the past participles of some verbs. Write the infinitive.

eaten	<u>eat</u>	made	_____	given	_____
seen	_____	taken	_____	won	_____
met	_____	ridden	_____	had	_____
drunk	_____	cooked	_____	stayed	_____
flown	_____	bought	_____	done	_____

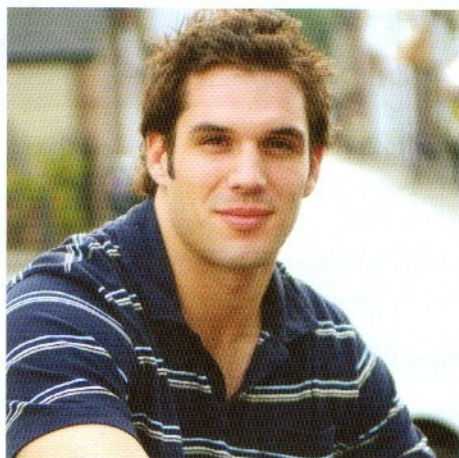
2 Which are the two regular verbs?

3 What are the Past Simple forms of the verbs?

4 Look at the list of irregular verbs on page 133 and check your answers.

What has Ryan done?

- 1 **CD3 31** Listen to Ryan talking about his life and put a check (✓) next to the things he has done.



- ☐ lived in a foreign country
- ☐ worked for a big company
- ☐ stayed in an expensive hotel
- ☐ flown in a jumbo jet
- ☐ cooked a meal for a lot of people
- ☐ met a famous person
- ☐ seen a play by Shakespeare
- ☐ ridden a motorcycle
- ☐ been to the hospital
- ☐ won a competition

- 2 Tell your teacher about Ryan and answer your teacher's questions.

He's lived in a foreign country.

Which country did he live in?

Japan.

How long did he live there?

One year.

- 3 Ask your teacher the questions from Exercise 1.

Have you ever lived in a foreign country?

Which country did you live in?

- 4 Ask a partner the questions. Tell the class about your partner.

A HONEYMOON IN VENICE

Present Perfect + yet and just

- 1 Ryan and Tara are on their honeymoon in Venice. Before they went, they made a list of things they wanted to do there. Read the list below.

VENICE

Things to do...

- ☐ have coffee in St. Mark's Square
- ☐ climb up the Bell Tower
- ☐ see the paintings in the Doge's Palace
- ☐ ride on a gondola
- ☐ go on a boat ride along the Grand Canal
- ☐ walk across the Rialto Bridge
- ☐ visit the glass factories on Murano Island
- ☐ go to the beach at the Lido

- 2 **CD3 32** Tara is calling her sister Amy back home in the U.S. Listen to their conversation. Put a check (✓) next to the things in the list she and Ryan have done.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Complete the sentences.

1. Have you _____ in a gondola yet?
2. We _____ climbed up the Bell Tower yet.
3. We just _____ on a boat ride along the Grand Canal.

- 2 Where do we put yet in a sentence? Where do we put just in a sentence?

- 3 We can only use yet with **two** of the following. Which two?

- ☐ Affirmative sentences
- ☐ Questions
- ☐ Negative sentences

►► Grammar Reference 12.2 p. 122

- 3 With a partner, talk about what Ryan and Tara have done and haven't done yet.

They've had coffee in St. Mark's Square.

They haven't climbed up the Bell Tower yet.

- CD3 32** Listen again and check.



PRACTICE

I just did it

- 1 Work with a partner. Make questions with *yet* and answers with *just*.

Have you called your mother yet?

Yes, I just called her.

1. do the dishes
2. have lunch
3. wash your hair
4. clean the car
5. make dinner
6. meet the new student
7. check your e-mail
8. give your homework to the teacher
9. finish the exercise

Check it

- 2 Put a check (✓) next to the correct sentence.
1. ☐ I saw Ryan yesterday.
☐ I've seen Ryan yesterday.
 2. ☐ Did you ever eat Chinese food?
☐ Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
 3. ☐ Tara won \$5,000 last month.
☐ Tara has won \$5,000 last month.
 4. ☐ I've never drank Italian coffee.
☐ I've never drunk Italian coffee.
 5. ☐ Steve has ever been to Taiwan.
☐ Steve has never been to Taiwan.
 6. ☐ Has your sister yet had the baby?
☐ Has your sister had the baby yet?
 7. ☐ I haven't done my homework yet.
☐ I've done my homework yet.
 8. ☐ Did she just bought a new car?
☐ Did she just buy a new car?

READING AND SPEAKING

We've never learned to drive!

- 1 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions. Compare your answers with the class.

Have you ever ... ?	When? Where? Who with?
... walked a long way?	
... cycled a long way?	
... hitchhiked?	
... ridden a motorcycle?	
... ridden a camel	
... driven a tractor?	

- 2 Read the introduction to the article and look at the photos. What questions would you like to ask Josie and Russell?
Which countries have you been to?
Why ... never learned to drive?
... ever been frightened?
... ever had an accident?

- 3 Work in two groups.

Group A Read about Josie.

Group B Read about Russell.

Try to find the answers to your questions in Exercise 2.

- 4 Answer the questions.

1. What is her/his job?
2. How did her/his love of travel start?
3. When did she/he start traveling?
4. Where has she/he been?
5. Does she/he travel alone or with other people?
6. What extreme weather conditions has she/he experienced?
7. What's the most frightening thing that has ever happened to her/him?
8. What does she/he like best about traveling?
9. What is she/he going to do next?

- 5 Find a partner from the other group. Compare your answers to the questions.

Language work

Find examples of the Present Perfect of these verbs in the article.

like cycle write travel learn ride make visit

What do you think?

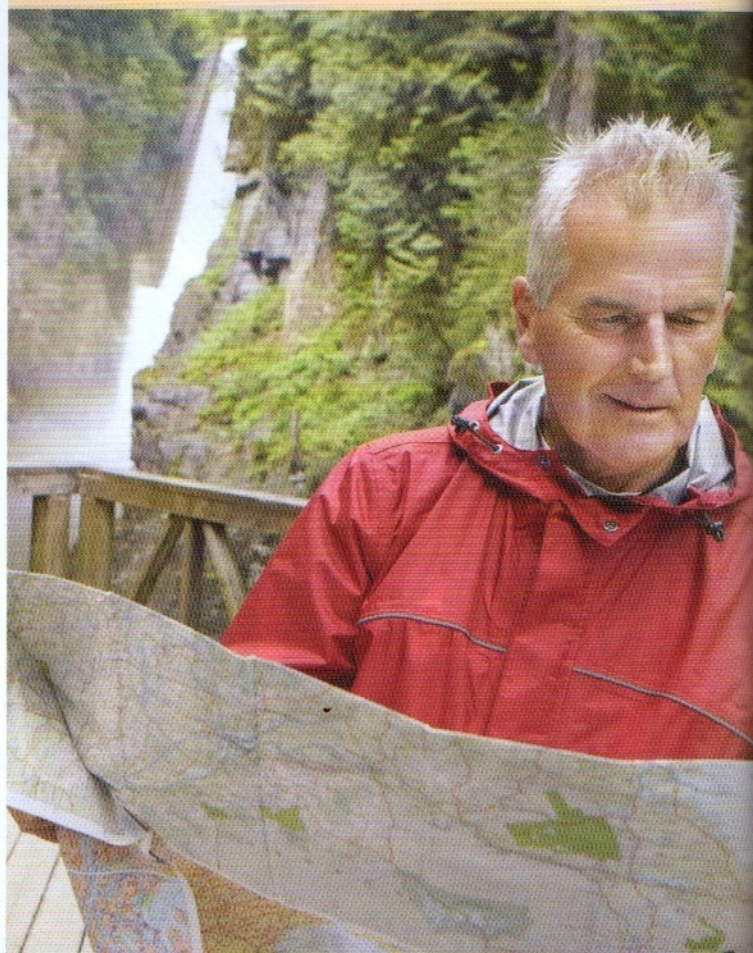
- Would you like to travel like Josie and Russell? Why/Why not?
- Do people cycle and hitchhike a lot in your country?
- What's your favorite way to travel? Why?

DRIVING?

**Not for me, thanks.
I'll walk, get the train,
cycle, hitch ...**

There are over 625 million cars in the world today, but some people just don't like them. Meet two great travelers who have been everywhere, but never behind a driving wheel.

Angela Matthews reports.



The woman at home on a bike

Josie Dew says it was her elementary school teacher who made her want to travel. "She told such wonderful stories about distant lands. I dreamed of visiting them one day." But after Josie fell out of a fast moving car when she was very young, she has never liked driving or being driven in anything with four wheels. She prefers two.

She has cycled all her life. She began touring when she was eleven, going around England and Scotland. Her first big tour was to Africa, cycling through Europe on her way to Tunisia and Algeria. She wrote a book about this trip, called *Wind in My Wheels*, and she has since written six more books.

When she's not cycling, she works as a professional chef. She says: "I work as hard as I can to pay for my next trip." She reckons she has cycled more than 300,000 miles in all five continents. She has been to over 43 countries. She has cycled through floods in the Himalayas, through baking deserts in Morocco, and through tornados in the U.S. She has often been near war zones, but has only had one really frightening experience. "A man attacked me while I was in Eastern Europe, and I had to escape."

She has sometimes cycled with friends, but she has mainly traveled alone. "What I like best is the sense of freedom. I meet more people when I'm on my own. People are so kind. They help me out and talk to me and I get to know people everywhere."

She has a daughter, Molly, who she takes with her on her cycling tours. "Molly has already been to Europe. Now we're planning a trip to Canada."



Life on the open road

When Russell Hartford was a child, he loved looking at maps. "I just think they are so exciting. I always knew that one day I would travel the world," he says. He was a teenager in the 1960s, and started hitchhiking because "everyone did it and it was free." His first trip was to Mexico when he was 17, and it was an adventure that opened his eyes.

He has never learned to drive because, he says: "I am hopeless with anything mechanical. I tried to drive once, but I backed into a wall, so I never tried again." When he got married, he and his new wife hitchhiked to Niagara Falls for their honeymoon.

He teaches geography at a college in Boston, so he usually waits for long school breaks to travel overseas. So far, he has been to over 40 countries in Europe, Latin America, Africa, and Asia. And he's gotten some strange rides. He's ridden on a motorcycle in Argentina, on a camel in Egypt, and on a tractor in China. Once he was standing on a highway in Alaska when it started to snow. "There was a snow storm and it was a complete whiteout. I couldn't see anything, and no one could see me. I nearly froze to death." The most danger he has ever been in was in Brazil, when a snake crossed the road right in front of him. "I later found out that it was a tropical rattlesnake—and very poisonous!"

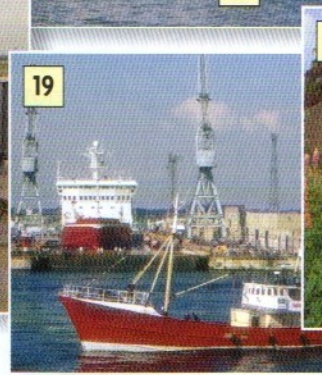
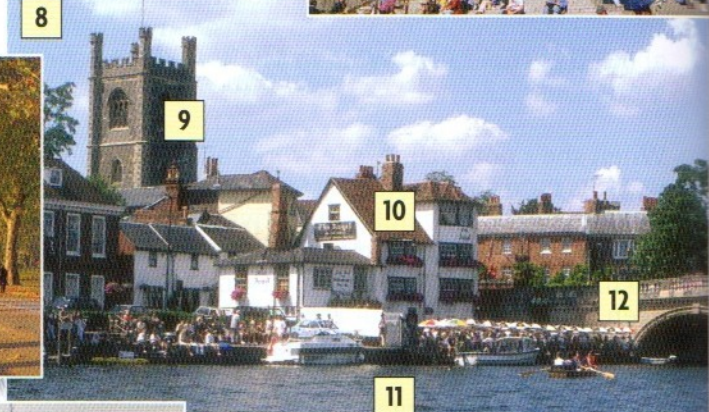
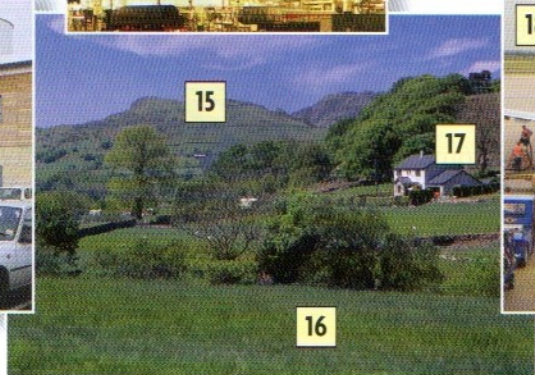
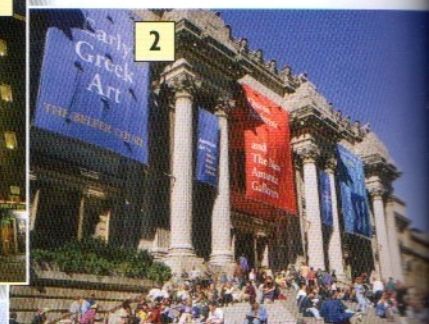
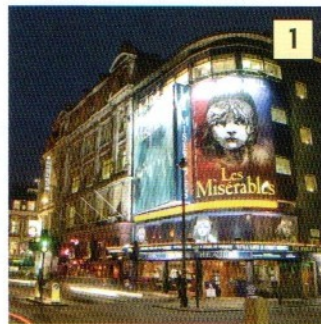
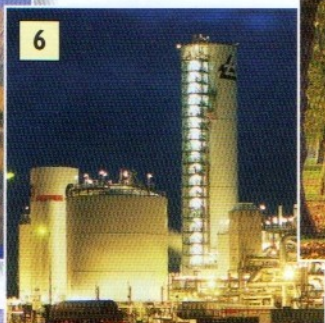
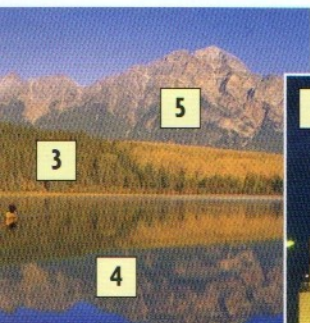
He sometimes travels with his wife, but usually on his own. "The best thing for me is meeting people from different cultures." He has made a lot of friends, and some of them have visited him. He's now planning a trip around the coast of Australia, the only continent he's never seen.

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

City and country words

1 Match these words with the pictures. Which things do you usually find only in the country?

woods park museum church farm bridge
parking lot port factory cafe field theater lake
village hill mountain cottage building river airport



2 Complete the sentences with a word from Exercise 1.

- Everest is the highest _____ in the world.
- The Golden Gate _____ in San Francisco is the longest _____ in the U.S.
- The Caspian Sea isn't a sea. It's the largest _____ in the world.
- Singapore is the busiest _____ in Asia. Ships from all over the world stop there.
- The Empire State _____ in New York was the tallest _____ in the world for over 40 years.

CD3 33 Listen and check.

3 Write these words from Exercise 1.

/wɒdʒ/ _____ /fɑːm/ _____ /'fæktəri/ _____
/fild/ _____ /'θiətər/ _____ /'brɪdʒ/ _____
/maʊntn/ _____ /tʃərtʃ/ _____ /'bɪldɪŋ/ _____

CD3 34 Listen and repeat.

4 Divide into two groups. Play the game. Which group can continue the longest?

Group 1 A walk in the country

Continue one after the other.

I went for a walk in the country and I saw a farm.

I went for a walk in the country and I saw a farm and some cows.

I went for ...

Group 2 A walk in the city

Continue one after the other.

I went for a walk in the city and I saw some stores.

I went for a walk in the city and I saw some stores and a park.

I went for ...

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

At the airport

1 What do you do at an airport? Read the sentences and put them in the correct order.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| ___ You wait in the departure lounge. | ___ You check in your luggage and get a boarding pass. |
| ___ You board the plane. | ___ You go through passport control. |
| ___ You get a cart for your luggage. | ___ You check the departures monitor for your gate number. |
| 1 ___ You arrive at the airport. | |

2 **CD3 35** Listen to the airport announcements and complete the chart.

FLIGHT NUMBER	DESTINATION	GATE NUMBER	REMARKS
United 823	SEATTLE	14	NOW BOARDING
American	LOS ANGELES		DELAYED
Northwest	DETROIT		NOW BOARDING
Air Canada	WINNIPEG		NOW BOARDING
Delta	ATLANTA		STANDBY

3 **CD3 36** Listen to the conversations. Who are the people? What are they doing?

- meeting people
- checking in luggage
- waiting in the departure lounge
- saying good-bye

4 Complete each conversation with the correct question.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| When can we see each other again? | Did the announcement say gate 4 or 14? |
| Did you have a good honeymoon? | And carry-on luggage? |

1. **A** Listen! ... United flight 823 to Seattle. That's our flight.
B _____ ?
A I couldn't hear. I think it said 14.
B Look! There it is on the monitor. It is gate 14.
A OK. Come on! Let's go.

2. **A** Can I have your ticket, please?
B Yes, of course.
A Thank you. How many suitcases do you have?
B Just one.
A _____ ?
B Just this bag.
A That's fine.
B Oh ... can I have a window seat?
A Sure ... OK. Here's your boarding pass. Have a nice flight!

3. **A** Ryan! Tara! Over here!
B Hi! Amy! Great to see you!
A It's great to see you, too. You look terrific! _____ ?
B Fantastic. Everything was great.
A Well, you haven't missed anything here. Nothing much has happened at all!

4. **A** Well, that's my flight. It's time to go.
B Oh no! It's been a wonderful two weeks. I can't believe it's over.
A I know. _____ ?
B Soon, I hope. I'll e-mail every day.
A I'll call, too. Good-bye.
B Good-bye. Give my love to your family.

CD3 36 Listen again and check. Work with a partner. Choose a conversation from Exercise 4. Learn it by heart. Pay attention to stress and intonation. Act it out for the class.

WRITING Writing an e-mail **p. 103**

Writing

UNIT 3 NATURAL WRITING – Using pronouns

- 1 Underline the pronouns and possessive adjectives in these sentences.

1. She likes my brother and he likes her.
2. Our mother works hard. Her job is interesting.
3. We listen to our teachers. They help us.

- 2 Complete the chart.

Subject pronouns	Object pronouns	Possessive adjectives
I	me	my
	you	
he	him	his
	her	
it	it	its
we	us	
	them	their

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct pronoun.

1. My sister has a new car, but she doesn't drive it.
2. Lucas has two sons. _____ plays basketball with _____ in his free time.
3. That's my dictionary. Can I have _____ back, please?
4. Ana's new teacher is Mr. Banks. _____ likes _____ a lot.
5. Rosa and I are good students. _____ like our teacher Estella and she likes _____.
6. Our teacher gives _____ a lot of homework.
7. Kate knows Joanna, but Maria doesn't know _____ at all.
8. Ken buys a newspaper every day. _____ reads _____ on the train.
9. Look! This is a photo of _____ with my family.
10. Carla lives near Paul and Mia. _____ goes to work with _____ every day in their car.



Subject pronouns come *before* the verb.
He knows them. **I** love him. **She** wants it.
 Object pronouns come *after* the verb.
 He knows **them**. I love **him**. She wants **it**.

- 4 Read about István's family.

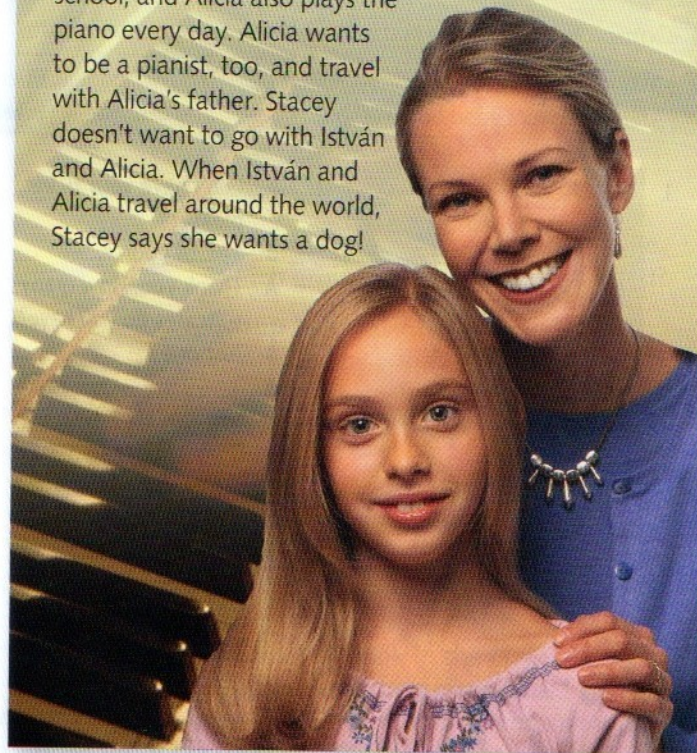
Who is István? Who is in the photo?

- 5 The text is not very natural. Which nouns can you replace with pronouns or possessive adjectives? Underline them.

István's family

István Kis is Hungarian, but István lives in the U.S. because István is married to an American. István is a music professor. István likes his job because his job is interesting, and István loves playing in concerts. István travels around the world to play, but István's wife, Stacey, doesn't go with István because Stacey doesn't like traveling.

István and Stacey have a nine-year-old daughter. István and Stacey's daughter's name is Alicia. Alicia goes to school, and Alicia also plays the piano every day. Alicia wants to be a pianist, too, and travel with Alicia's father. Stacey doesn't want to go with István and Alicia. When István and Alicia travel around the world, Stacey says she wants a dog!



- 6 Work with a partner and rewrite the text to make it more natural. Begin like this.

István Kis is Hungarian, but he lives in the U.S. ...

UNIT 4 INFORMAL LETTERS – To a pen pal

- 1 Do you have friends from different countries? Who? Where from? Talk to a partner.
- 2 Read Becky's letter to her pen pal, Tiago.
 - Where is she?
 - Where is he?
 - What does Becky write about?

We begin all letters
with *Dear*...

Dear Tiago,

Thank you for your address in Brazil! My name's Becky and I'm 19 years old. I'm a language student at Columbia University. I live in an apartment in Brooklyn with my mother and father, my brother James, and my Korean friend So-young.

I speak French, Spanish, and a little German, but I don't speak Portuguese. Sorry! My favorite subject in school is Spanish, but I don't like German.

I like listening to music and swimming. On weekends I go out with my friends. Sometimes we go to the movies and sometimes we go to a cafe or a restaurant.

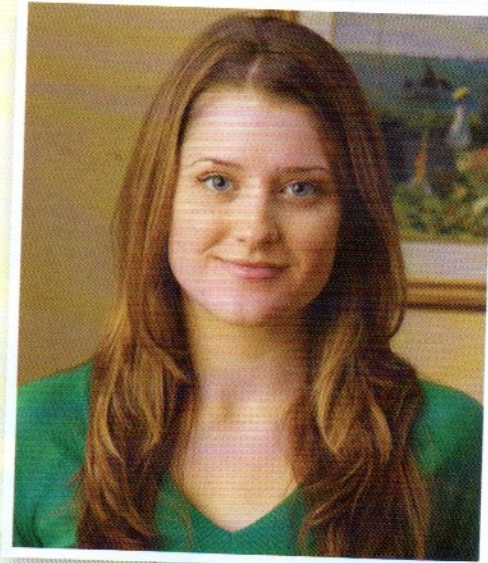
What about you? What do you do in Brazil? Please write to me.

Best wishes,

Becky

*83 Grand Street
Brooklyn, NY 11211*

April 5



We end letters to a
friend with *Best wishes*.
We use *Love* if we know
the person very well.



- 3 Read the letter again.
 - How does it begin and end?
 - What is the date?
 - What is Becky's address?
 - What is the zip code?
 - Do you write addresses in the same way?
- 4 Write a similar letter to a pen pal about you.

*Tiago Costa
Rua Bellavista 118
Fortaleza
Brazil*

UNIT 5 DESCRIBING WHERE YOU LIVE Linking words – *and, so, but, because*

1 Join A, B and C to make sentences.

A	B	C
I like New York	and so but because	I don't like Los Angeles. it's an exciting city. I go there a lot. I like Chicago.

2 Write similar sentences about where you live.
Start *I like/don't like* (your town)...

3 Complete the sentences with *and, so, but, or because*.

- In my bedroom there's a television and a DVD player.
- We live on the top floor, _____ we don't have a backyard.
- I like living here _____ it's near the stores.
- I like Mexican food, _____ my husband doesn't like it.
- We both like sailing, _____ we live near the sea.
- New York is expensive, _____ I like it.

4 Read about Suzie's new apartment. Complete the text with the linking words in Exercise 1.



Where I live



I live in a new apartment in Washington, DC. It's very small, (1) _____ it's nice! There's a sunny living room, a kitchen, a bedroom, (2) _____ a bathroom. The living room has a big window (3) _____ a comfortable sofa in front

of it. There isn't a very big backyard, (4) _____ there is a park at the end of the street, (5) _____ in the summer I often go there to read or sunbathe.

I live alone with my cat, Marmalade, (6) _____ I never feel lonely (7) _____ I have a lot of visitors. My friends come to see me a lot, (8) _____ we sometimes watch a movie or cook dinner.

I love my apartment for many reasons: the sunny living room, the good times with friends, (9) _____ best of all (10) _____ it is my first home.

5 Make notes about where you live. Use these questions.

- Where is it?
- How many rooms are there?
- What is near your home?
- Is it old or new?
- Who do you live with?
- Do you like it? What do you like best of all?

Talk to a partner about your notes.

6 Write a description of your home.

UNIT 6 FORMAL LETTERS – Applying for a job

- 1 Read the advertisement for a job.
What is the job? Where is it?

THE CHICAGO INTERNATIONAL SCHOOL wants a receptionist

- Do you like working with people?
- Can you speak two foreign languages?
- Can you use a computer?
- Do you know Chicago well?

Please write to: Anne Watson, Director
The Chicago International School
10 Lincoln Road, Chicago, IL 60601
or email: awatson@chicagoint.edu

- 2 Carol is interested in the job. Read the information about her.
Do you think she is the right person for the job?

Name	Carol Barnes
Age	28
Address	6 Walton Street Chicago, IL 60615
Present job	Tour guide
Last job	Hotel receptionist
Languages	French, Spanish



- 3 Look at Carol's letter and complete it with the information from her chart.

The name and address of the person you are writing to goes here.

Anne Watson, Director
The Chicago International School
10 Lincoln (2) _____
Chicago, IL 60601

6 Walton (1) _____
Chicago, IL 60615

The date goes here.

August 19

Dear Ms. Watson,

We use Ms., Miss, or Mrs.
for a woman.

I am interested in the job of (3) _____ at your school.

We use Mr. for a man.

I am (4) _____ years old and I (5) _____ in Chicago. At the moment I'm a (6) _____ guide, but last year I (7) _____ a hotel receptionist. I (8) _____ working with people very much and I (9) _____ speak two (10) _____, French and a little Spanish. I can also (11) _____ a computer. I (12) _____ born in Chicago, so I know it very well.

We end formal letters
with *Yours sincerely*.

I look forward to hearing from you. _____

Sign the letter and print
your name.

Yours sincerely,

Carol Barnes

Carol Barnes

Paragraph 1
Introduction

Paragraph 2
The main part
of the letter

Paragraph 3
Ending

- 4 Read this advertisement for another job.
What is the job? Answer the questions
about you. Now write a similar letter
to Carol's.



Happy Travelers want TOUR GUIDES

- Are you over 18?
- Do you like talking to people?
- Do you know your town well?
- Can you speak English?
- Are you free from July to September?

Please write to: Peter Mann, Happy Travelers, Central Office, 89 Brook Street, New York, NY 10016

UNIT 7 DESCRIBING A VACATION

1 Read the information about Jim and Amy. Make notes about your last vacation.

Questions	Jim	Amy	Me
Where/go?	Vermont	Japan	
When/go?	last June	last October	
How long/stay?	a week	three weeks	
How/travel?	train	plane	
Where/stay?	a bed and breakfast	with friends	
What/do?	went walking in the countryside	visited Tokyo and Kyoto	
What/see?	some beautiful mountains and rivers; <i>not</i> any people!	some beautiful temples; <i>not</i> Mount Fuji	
Enjoy the vacation?	Yes	Yes	

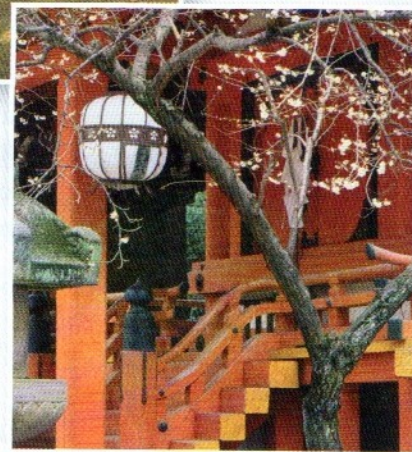
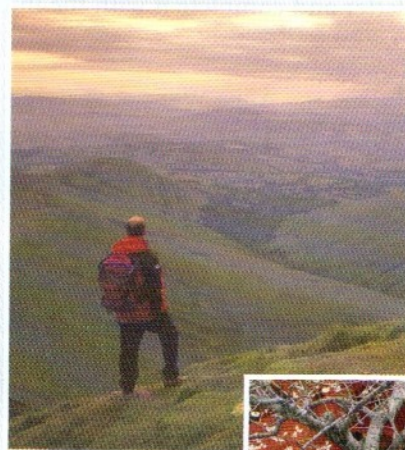
2 Ask and answer the questions about Jim with a partner.

Where did he go? **To Vermont.**

How long did he stay? **For a week.**

3 Complete the questions about Amy and write short answers.

- Where did she go ? **To Japan.**
- When _____ ?
- How long _____ ?
- How _____ ?
- Where _____ ?
- What _____ ?
- What _____ ?
- Did _____ ? **Yes, she did.**



4 Read about Amy's vacation. Put the verbs in the Past Simple.

My exciting vacation

Last October I (1) _____ (have) a very exciting vacation.

I (2) _____ (go) to Japan for three weeks to stay with friends.

I (3) _____ (travel) by plane. It (4) _____ (be) a long trip, but fortunately my friends (5) _____ (meet) me at the airport and (6) _____ (drive) me straight to their house.

I (7) _____ (stay) with my friends for the first week. The second week I (8) _____ (visit) Tokyo. The third week I (9) _____ (take) the train to Kyoto where I (10) _____ (see) some beautiful temples and gardens. I (11) _____ (enjoy) the vacation very much, but I (12) _____ (not see) Mount Fuji. Next time I want to climb it with my friends.

5 Talk to a partner about your last vacation. Then write about it.

UNIT 8 WRITING ABOUT A FRIEND Linking words – *because, when, until*

1 Make sentences with a line in A, a word in B, and a line in C.

A		B	C
1. I left the party early			a. she was thirty.
2. Peter couldn't speak			b. they came for dinner.
3. Tim didn't see the canals			c. I was at school.
4. Eva didn't start learning English			d. she couldn't afford them.
5. I didn't enjoy math class			e. after midnight.
6. Courtney didn't buy the red shoes			f. he was nearly four.
7. They didn't go to bed			g. I didn't feel well.
8. We met Ken's wife last Saturday			h. he was in Bangkok.

2 Write notes about an old friend. Use these questions to help.

- What is his/her name?
- How often do you meet now?
- Where did you meet?
- What do you do when you meet?
- What did you do together?

Talk to a partner about your notes.

3 Read the text about "My oldest friend." Complete the text with words from the box.

and but because so when until

My oldest friend

My oldest friend is named Sandra. We met 30 years ago (1) _____ we were both five years old. It was my first day at school (2) _____ I was very unhappy (3) _____ I wanted my mom. Sandra gave me candy (4) _____ we became friends immediately. We were together nearly every day (5) _____ we finished school twelve years later.

Then I went to college, (6) _____ Sandra didn't. She married (7) _____ she was just 18 (8) _____ had three children. I studied for eight years (9) _____ I wanted to be an accountant. I had a lot of new friends, (10) _____ I didn't see Sandra very often. Sometimes we didn't meet for months, (11) _____ we often talked on the telephone.

Now I'm married, too. I live near Sandra (12) _____ we meet every week. She's a student now, (13) _____ I have a baby, (14) _____ we can give each other a lot of advice!



4 Write about your friend. Use your notes to help.

UNIT 9 FILLING OUT FORMS Booking a hotel

1 Read the e-mail.

- Who is it from?
- What is it about?
- Who is it to?
- How does it begin and end?

2 These lines are from the e-mail. Where do they go?

- Could you tell me what time the restaurant closes?
- I look forward to hearing from you.
- Could I possibly have a quiet room away from the pool?



From: p.west@teleport.net
To: bookings@blueseas.com
Date: March 17
Subject: Booking a room

Dear Sir or Madam,

I would like to book a deluxe room at your hotel for the nights of April 12, 13, and 14.
(1) _____

I understand you have a restaurant.
(2) _____

My details are: 15 Carlton Street, Dallas, TX 75201.
Tel: (214) 566-4945. Please let me know if you need a deposit or a credit card number.

Thank you very much.
(3) _____

Sincerely,
Peter West

3 Look at the hotel's online booking form. Complete the form with information about Peter West in Exercise 1.

www.blueseabeach.hotel Search

BLUE SEA BEACH HOTEL **ONLINE BOOKING FORM**

Please complete this form. Room prices include breakfast.

Name		Number of guests	☐ Adults	☐ Children	
E-mail		Number of rooms	☐ Standard	☐ Deluxe	☐ Suite
Tel/Fax		Check-in		mm/dd/yy	
Address		Check-out		mm/dd/yy	
Country		Additional information			

4 Write an e-mail to book a room at the hotel.

- Book a standard room for four nights next month.
- Ask for a room with a view of the ocean.
- Ask about Internet and other facilities (phone, television, room service, parking, etc.).
- Give your personal details.



These two sentences have the same meaning. How are they different? Which is more formal?

I like him a lot, but I don't love him.
Although I like him a lot, I don't love him.

- 1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

although because but
too both for example

1. My father loves skiing, but my mother hates it.
2. We stopped playing tennis _____ it started to rain.
3. _____ it was cold and wet, we still played tennis.
4. My two sisters are very similar. They _____ love dancing and skiing.
5. Rosa loves dancing and Hannah loves it _____.
6. There's so much to do on weekends. _____ you can go skiing or swimming.

- 2 Complete the text with the correct linking word from Exercise 1.

- 3 Work with a partner. Talk about your brothers, sisters, parents, or children. Are you/they similar? Do you/they like doing the same things?

- 4 Write about two people in your family and compare them. Describe ...

- what they look like
- their likes and dislikes
- their personalities



My brother and sister

I have a brother Ben, and a sister Ana. They are a lot younger than me, and (1) although they are twins, they don't look alike at all. Ben has red hair, (2) _____ Ana's hair is blonde. They (3) _____ have blue eyes, (4) _____ Ben is much taller than Ana. They are interested in different things (5) _____. (6) _____, Ben likes numbers and letters, but Ana prefers painting and drawing.

(7) _____ they are so different, there are still some things that they (8) _____ like doing. (9) _____, they love coming into my room and playing with my things, (10) _____ they think my things are much more interesting than theirs!

(11) _____ they are sometimes really noisy and annoying, I love them very much (12) _____ they are so funny.

UNIT 11 WRITING A POSTCARD

- 1 Discuss these questions with a partner.
 - Do you often receive postcards? Who from? Where from? Give examples.
 - What was the last postcard you sent? Who to? Where from?
- 2 Read the postcard. Find words for good weather and bad weather.
- 3 Underline the descriptions for a good vacation *or* a bad vacation. Read your postcard to your partner.

Friday, June 14th

Dear Mom and Dad,

We're having | a wonderful | time here in Puerto Rico,
| a pretty good |
| and fortunately | the weather is | great |. They say
| but unfortunately | | not very good |
that the weather here in June is often very changeable
so we're | just unlucky |. It is | warm and sunny | nearly
| very lucky | | wet and cloudy |
every day, so most of the time we | stay in the hotel | and
| go to the beach |
| play cards |. Yesterday it was so | hot | that we
| swim and sunbathe | | rainy |
couldn't | see the sea |. Tomorrow we're not going to
| lie in the sun |
| the beach | we're going to drive around the island
| stay in the hotel |
and go sightseeing.
see you soon
Love, Laura and Mike

Mr. and Mrs. Binchey
82 Hill Road
Dublin
Ireland



- 4 Write a postcard to a friend. Write about ...
 - where you are on vacation
 - the weather
 - something you do often
 - something you did yesterday
 - something you are going to do tomorrow

UNIT 12 WRITING AN E-MAIL Saying thank you

- 1 Have you ever been to another country to study the language? Where did you go? For how long? What language did you study? Did you have a good time?
- 2 Do you remember So-young who went to study English in New York City? Look quickly at the e-mail.
 - Where is So-young now?
 - Where are they?
 - Who is Jae-sun?
 - Who is she writing to?
 - Why is she writing?
- 3 Read the e-mail again and complete it with the words from the box. Check with a partner.

lot	going x2	couldn't
visit	just	has
quickly	much	but
had	like	

From: So-young@kmail.kr
To: Becky@teleport.net
Date: October 23
Subject: Hi!

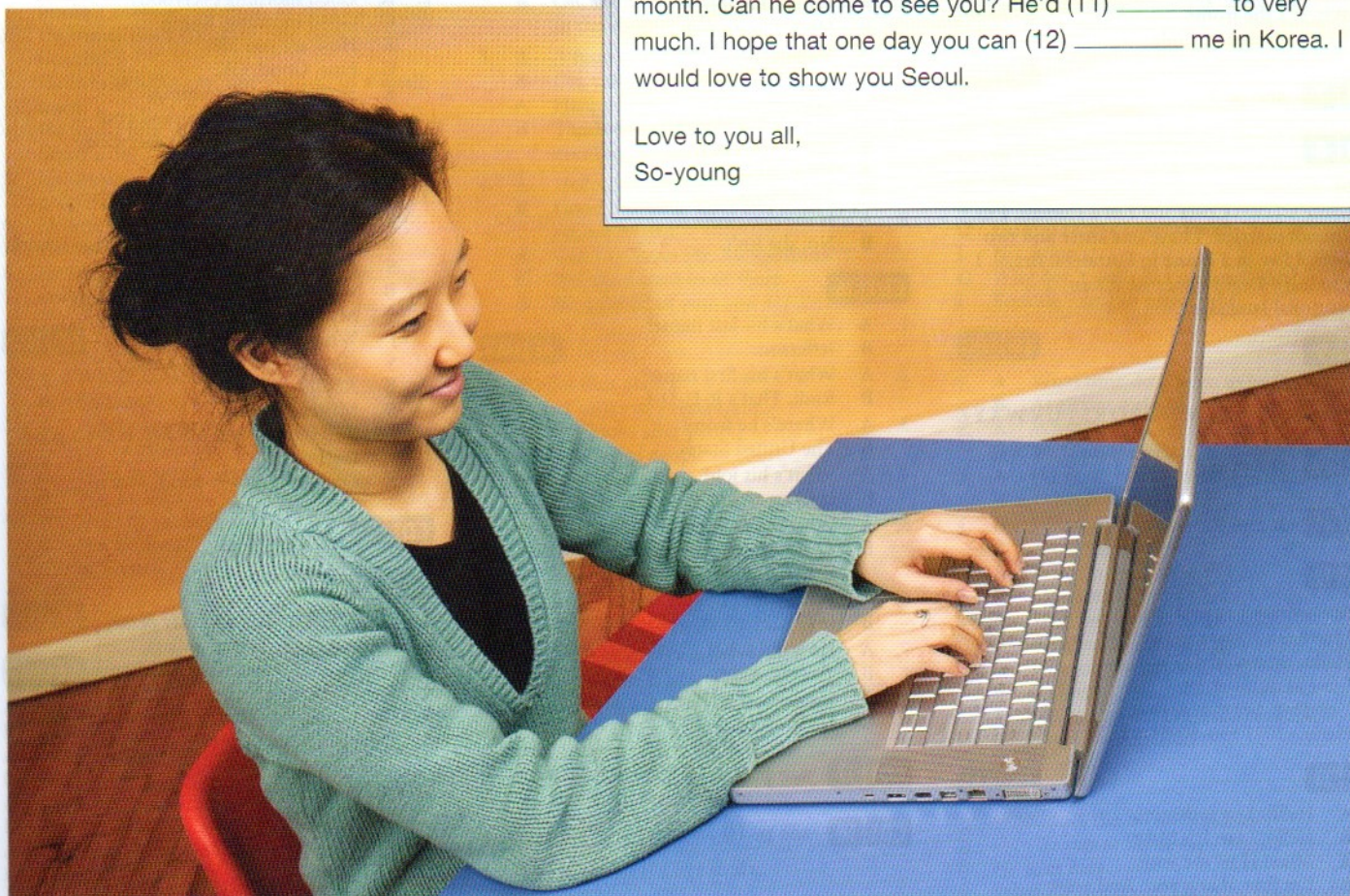
Dear Becky and family,

I have (1) _____ arrived back in Korea. It's nice to see my family again (2) _____. I miss you and all my friends in New York. I (3) _____ a wonderful time with you and your family. I enjoyed myself very (4) _____. Also, it was very nice of you to show me so much of the city. I loved (5) _____ to Central Park, and I'll never forget visiting the Empire State Building and the Statue of Liberty.

I think that my English (6) _____ improved a (7) _____. At first I was so worried because I (8) _____ understand a word. You all spoke so (9) _____, but soon I began to understand more and more.

My brother, Jae-sun, is (10) _____ to New York City next month. Can he come to see you? He'd (11) _____ to very much. I hope that one day you can (12) _____ me in Korea. I would love to show you Seoul.

Love to you all,
 So-young



- 4 Write a similar e-mail to someone you have stayed with.

Audio Scripts

UNIT 1

CD1 2 see p. 2

CD1 3

- A Hello. My name's Lisa. What's your name?
 B Mike.
 A Where are you from, Mike?
 B I'm from Boston. Where are you from?
 A I'm from Boston, too!

CD1 4

1. This is Miguel. He's from Mexico.
2. This is Emma. She's from Canada.
3. This is Lisa and Mike. They're from the U.S.

CD1 5 see p. 4

CD1 6

1. He's from Vietnam.
2. What's her name?
3. They're from Japan.
4. Where's she from?
5. He's a teacher in Chile.

CD1 7 see p. 5

CD1 8

Tiago

My name's Tiago Costa and I'm a student. I'm 18. I'm not married. I have one sister and two brothers. I live in a house in Fortaleza, Brazil. I want to learn English because it's an international language.

CD1 9

The alphabet song

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

CD1 10 see p. 6

CD1 11 see p. 7

CD1 12

1. My brother has four children.
2. I have ten stamps in my bag.
3. Hello, extension 4177.
4. I live at number 19.
5. Goodbye. See you at five.
6. Hello. (202) 350-6095?

CD1 13

1. A Hello. Lisa Jefferson.
 B Hello, Lisa. It's Mike.
 A Mike! How are you?
 B I'm fine, thank you. And you?
 A I'm OK, thanks.

2. A Is 7:00 OK with you, Emma?
 B Yes. 7:00 is fine.
 A Great! Have a nice day!
 B Thanks, Miguel. See you later!
3. A Hello?
 B Hi, Anna! It's me, Charles. How are you?
 A Not bad, thanks. And you?
 B Just fine, thanks. How are the children?
 A They're fine.

CD1 14 see p. 7

UNIT 2

CD1 15

1. A What's her last name?
 B Jefferson.
2. A What's her first name?
 B Lisa.
3. A Where's she from?
 B The United States.
4. A What's her job?
 B She's a journalist.
5. A What's her address?
 B 89 Franklin Street, Boston
 Massachusetts
6. A What's her phone number?
 B (617) 326-1204.
7. A How old is she?
 B Twenty-six.
8. A Is she married?
 B No, she isn't.

CD1 16

1. A What's his last name?
 B Jefferson.
2. A What's his first name?
 B Rudi. That's R-U-D-I.
3. A Where's he from?
 B The United States.
4. A What's his job?
 B He's an actor.
5. A What's his address?
 B 82 Beacon Street, Boston. That's Beacon,
 B-E-A-C-O-N Street. Boston.
6. A What's his phone number?
 B (617) 227-5930.
7. A How old is he?
 B Twenty-eight.
8. A Is he married?
 B No, he isn't.

CD1 17 see p. 9

CD1 18 see p. 10

CD1 19

1. It's small. It's big.
2. It's easy. It's difficult.
3. He's old. She's young.
4. They're old. They're new.
5. It's nice. It's awful.
6. It's fast. It's slow.
7. They're hot. They're cold.
8. It's cheap. It's expensive.

CD1 20 see p. 13

CD1 21

S=So-young, J=Julio

1. S Hello. My name's So-young.
 J Hello, So-young. I'm Julio.
 S Where are you from, Julio?
 J I'm from Mexico, from Guadalajara.
 And you? Where are you from?
 S I'm from Korea.
 J From Seoul?
 S Yes, that's right.

K=Karen, C=Class, S=So-young

2. K Good morning everybody.
 C Good morning, Karen.
 K How are you all?
 C Fine. Good. OK.
 K How are you So-young?
 S I'm fine, thank you. And you?
 K Very well. Now listen everybody ...

B=Becky, S=So-young, J=Julie

3. B Bye, So-young. Have a nice day.
 S Excuse me?
 B Have a good day at the language school.
 S Ah, yes. Thank you.
 B What's your teacher called?
 S My teacher called?
 J What's her name?
 S Oh, yes. Her name's Karen.
 B And is she good?
 S My teacher good?
 J Yes. Karen, your teacher, is she a good teacher?
 S Oh yes, yes. Very good, very nice.

CD1 22 see p. 14

CD1 23

1. That's five dollars and fifty cents, please.
2. Look, it's only twelve dollars.
3. Here you are. Twenty cents change.
4. Pizza is three seventy-five.
5. One hundred dollars for that is very expensive.
6. Nine fifteen, not nine fifty.

CD1 24 see p. 14

CD1 25

1. A Good morning.
 B Good morning. Can I have a coffee, please?

- A Sure. Anything else?
 B No, thanks.
 A One dollar and fifty cents, please.
 B Thanks.
 A Thank you.
2. A Hi. Can I help you?
 B Yes. Can I have a grilled chicken sandwich, please?
 A Anything to drink?
 B Yeah. A mineral water, please.
 A OK. Here you are.
 B How much is that?
 A Seven fifty, please.
 B OK. Thanks.

CD1 26 see p. 15

UNIT 3

CD1 27 see pp. 16–17

CD1 28

is	works	likes
comes	speaks	flies
lives	has	loves

CD1 29

- István's a music professor. Pamela's a doctor.
- He comes from Hungary. She comes from Canada.
- He lives in a big city, but she lives in a small town.
- He works four days a week. She works 16 hours a day.
- He speaks three languages. She speaks to sick people on her radio.
- He loves his job and she loves her job, too.
- He has a daughter. She isn't married.
- He likes playing tennis in his free time. She never has free time.

CD1 30

- A Where does István come from?
 B Budapest, in Hungary.
- A What does he do?
 B He's a music professor.
- A Does he speak German?
 B Yes, he does.
- A Does he speak Spanish?
 B No, he doesn't. He doesn't speak Spanish or French.

CD1 31 see p. 18

CD1 32

- A Where does Pamela come from?
 B Canada.
 A What does she do?
 B She's a doctor.
 A Does she live in Canada?
 B No, she doesn't.
 A Does she like her job?
 B Yes, she does.

CD1 33

- Iman comes from Somalia.
- Iman lives and works in Somalia.
- She's a tour guide.
- She speaks five languages.
- She likes playing tennis in her free time.
- She isn't married.
- Giorgio works in an office in London.
- He is Italian.
- He has three sons.
- He likes relaxing with his family in his free time.

CD1 34

- She likes her job.
- She loves walking.
- He isn't married.
- Does he have three children?
- What does he do?

CD1 35

- A Good afternoon. Can I have two ice cream cones, please?
 B Chocolate or vanilla?
 A One chocolate, one vanilla, please.
 B That's one eighty. Anything else?
 A No, thank you.
- A Only two letters for you this morning, Mrs. Craig.
 B Thank you very much, Mr. McSporran. And how's Mrs. McSporran this morning?
 A Oh, she's very well, thank you. She's busy in the shop.
- A A mug of tea before bed, Dearie?
 B Oh, yes please.
 A Here you are.
 B Thank you, Dearie. I'm very tired this evening.
- A Hello, Mr. McSporran!
 B Good morning, boys and girls. Hurry up, we're late.
 A Can I sit here, Mr. McSporran?
 C No, no, I want to sit there.
 B Be quiet all of you, and SIT DOWN!

CD1 36

- A pilot flies planes.
- A chef cooks in a restaurant.
- A nurse looks after people in the hospital.
- A lawyer helps people in court.
- An actor makes movies.
- A journalist writes for a newspaper.
- A model wears beautiful clothes.
- An architect designs buildings.
- A sales assistant sells things.

CD1 37

- It's five o'clock. It's eight o'clock.
- It's five-thirty. It's eleven-thirty.
- It's a quarter after five. It's a quarter after two.
- It's a quarter to six. It's a quarter to nine.
- It's five after five. It's ten after five.
- It's twenty after five. It's twenty-five after five.
- It's twenty-five to six. It's twenty to six.
- It's ten to six. It's five to six.

CD1 38 see p. 23

UNIT 4

CD1 39

Lisa Parsons is thirty-two years old and lives in Manhattan. From Monday to Friday she works at a bookstore in New York. Sometimes she stays at work until 10:30 at night, but Lisa doesn't relax on weekends. On weekends she has another job—she is a singer. On Saturday afternoons she practices with her band, and on Saturday and Sunday nights she goes to nightclubs and sings. She has no free time, but she loves her life!

CD1 40

I love singing and I love books, so I'm very happy. My weekends are very exciting, but I enjoy my weekdays too. I'm lucky, I live near the bookstore and I don't start work until 10:00 A.M. Every morning I get up at 8:00, make breakfast, and watch the news on TV. Then I walk to work. I'm very busy all day. I help people find the books they want. At lunchtime I get a sandwich from the deli and I often go to the gym. I usually finish work at 5:30 P.M., but on Tuesday and Thursday evenings I work very late, until 10:30. I never cook after work. I'm too tired. I sometimes like going to the little restaurant near my apartment. Saturday mornings, I go shopping and clean my apartment. I don't eat dinner on Saturday and Sunday evenings because I'm too excited. I like singing, but I'm always nervous before the show.

CD1 41

Q=Question, L=Lisa

- Q Where do you work?
 L In New York.
 Q Do you like your job?
 L Yes, I do.
 Q Do you relax on weekends?
 L No, I don't.
 Q Why don't you relax on weekends?
 L Because I sing in nightclubs.

CD1 42

- A What time do you go to bed?
 B At eleven o'clock.
- A Where do you go on vacation?
 B To Hawaii or Florida.
- A What do you do on Sundays?
 B I always relax.
- A When do you do your homework?
 B After dinner.
- A Who do you live with?
 B My mother and sisters.
- A Why do you like your job?
 B Because it's interesting.
- A How do you get to school?
 B By bus.
- A Do you go out on Friday evenings?
 B Yes, I do sometimes.

CD1 43

- What does she do on Sundays?
- Do you stay at home on Thursday evenings?
- He lives here.
- What do you do on Saturday evenings?
- I read a lot.
- Why don't you like your job?

CD1 44 see pp. 28–29**CD1 45**

- N This is great, Alex.
A I know, May's a beautiful month here.
N Do you go snowboarding and skiing every May?
A Yeah, I come here every spring for two weeks. I love it.
N You are so lucky. I want to come next year too.
A Great! Hey, you look cold! Do you want to stop for coffee now?
N Yeah! Good idea!
- D Phew! It's hot today.
M It sure is. Daniela, Can you get the drinks?
D Of course, mom.
M Carlos, how's the chicken?
D It's almost done.
M Great. And here's the salad. Daniela, can you tell your cousins that lunch is ready?
D Sure, Mom.
M Thanks. Carlos, come and enjoy.
A Okay. Mmm it looks good.
- T Hello! Can you help me? Can you speak English?
S Yes. A little.
T Can you tell me—what festival is this?
S It's our Flower Festival. We have it every February.
T It's so beautiful! I love the small pink and white flowers.
S They are orchids.
T Wow! There are hundreds!
S Do you like dancing? We have Thai dancing here this evening.
T Oh, yes. I want to see that!

CD1 46 Song: Teacher's Book p. 115**CD1 47**

- A I'm sorry I'm late. The traffic is bad today.
B That's OK. Come and sit down. We're on page 25.
- A Excuse me.
B Yes?
A Do you have a dictionary?
B I'm sorry, I don't. It's at home.
A Oh, OK. Thanks anyway.
- A It's very hot in here. Can I open the window?
B Really? I'm kind of cold
A OK. It doesn't matter.
- A Excuse me.
B Oh, good morning, Miguel. Can I help you?
A Yes, please. Can I have a ticket for the ski trip?
B Yes, of course. It's eighty dollars. Do you want to pay twenty dollars deposit now?
A Sorry. What does "deposit" mean?
B It means you can pay the twenty dollars now and sixty dollars later.
A Ah! Now I understand! Yes, please.

CD1 48

I'm sorry I'm late.
That's OK.
Excuse me.
I'm sorry.
Thanks anyway.
Can I open the window?
Really?
It doesn't matter.
Excuse me.
What does "deposit" mean?
Now I understand!

UNIT 5**CD2 2**

- A Is there a television?
B Yes, there is.
A Is there a computer?
B No, there isn't.
A Are there any books?
B Yes, there are.
A How many books are there?
B There are a lot.
A Are there any pictures?
B No, there aren't.

CD2 3**What's in your picture?**

There are three people in the living room. A man and a woman on the sofa and a little girl in the armchair. There's a radio on the coffee table and a rug under it. There's a cat on the rug in front of the fire. There are a lot of pictures on the walls, but there aren't any photographs. There are two plants on the floor next to the television and some flowers on the small table next to the sofa.

CD2 4**Suzie's kitchen**

S=Suzie, M=Mom

- S And this is the kitchen.
M Mmm, it's very nice.
S Well, it's not very big, but there are a lot of cabinets. And there's a new refrigerator, and a stove. That's new too.
M But what's *in* all these cabinets.
S Well, not a lot. There are some cups, but there aren't any glasses. And I have some knives and forks, but I don't have any spoons!
M Do you have any plates?
S Yes, I do. Here they are.
M Good. We can use those plates for this cake.

CD2 5**Yoshi's briefcase**

What's in my briefcase? Well, there's a newspaper—a Japanese newspaper—and there's a dictionary—my Japanese/English dictionary. I have some pens, three, I think. Also I have a notebook for vocabulary. I write words in that every day. And of course I have my keys—my car keys and my house keys. Oh yes, very important, there are some photos of my family, my wife, and my daughter. And there's my cell phone. I call home to Tokyo every night. That's all, I think. I don't have any stamps and my address book is in my hotel.

CD2 6**Homes around the world****Claire and Bert from New England**

- C Our house is pretty old, about fifty years old. It's near the city center. All the houses here are white. We have a living room, a big kitchen, and three bedrooms, and a big verandah all around the house.
B Our children aren't at home now. They both have jobs in the city, so most of the time it's just Claire and me.
C Yes, so in summer we use it as a bed and breakfast for tourists. We have nice visitors from all over the world.

Alise from Samoa

I live with my family in a house near the sea. We have an open house,—ummm—that is—our house doesn't have any walls. Houses in Samoa don't have walls because it is very, very hot, but we have blinds to stop the rain and sun. Our house is in the old style. We have only *one* room for living and sleeping, so it is both a bedroom and a living room. We have rugs and we sit and sleep on the floor.

Kwan from Korea

I live and work in Seoul, the capital city of Korea. It's a big, modern, exciting city, but it is pretty expensive. My apartment is very, very small. I have three rooms: a small kitchen, a bathroom, and a room for sitting, eating, and sleeping. But I live in the city center, and there are a lot of stores and restaurants near my apartment. My work place is near, too. I live alone at the moment, but I want to marry my girlfriend next year.

Manola from Lisbon

I live in the old town near the sea. It is called the Alfama. I have a very beautiful apartment. There's just *one* room in my apartment, one very big room with one very big window. My bed's next to the window so I see the sea and all the lights of the city when I go to sleep. I live alone, but I have a cat and I'm near the stores and lots of friends come to visit me. I love my apartment.

CD2 7

- A Excuse me! Is there a newsstand near here?
B Yes. It's on Church Street. Take the first street on the right. It's next to the music store.
A OK. Thanks.
- A Is there a post office near here?
B Go straight ahead, and it's on the left, next to the travel agent.
A Thanks a lot.
- A Excuse me! Is there a cafe near here?
B There's an Internet cafe on Park Lane next to the bank, and there's an Italian restaurant on Church Street next to the travel agent.
A Is that one far?
B No. Just two minutes, that's all.

CD2 8 see p. 39

UNIT 6

CD2 9 see p. 40

CD2 10 see p. 40

CD2 11

1. I can speak French, but I can't speak Portuguese.
2. He can't dance, but he can sing.
3. "Can you cook?" "Yes, I can."
4. They can ski, but they can't swim.
5. We can dance and we can sing.
6. "Can she drive?" "No, she can't."

CD2 12

Lucia

Well, there are a lot of things I can't do. I can't drive a car, of course, I'm only 14. Languages? Well, I can't speak French, but I can speak Spanish. My mother's Spanish, and we often go to Spain. My mom's a really good cook. She can cook really well, not just Spanish food, all kinds of food, but I can't cook at all. I just love eating! What about sports? Ummm—I think I'm good at a lot of sports. I can play tennis, and I can ski. Sometimes we go skiing in the Spanish Pyrenees. And of course I can swim. But musical instruments—no. I can't play any at all. But I can dance! I dance flamenco with my mom sometimes. I love it. And I can use a computer, of course. All my friends can.

CD2 13 see p. 42

CD2 14 see p. 42

CD2 15

E=Emma, M=Miguel

- E Were you at Charlotte's party last Saturday?
 M Yes, I was.
 E Was it good?
 M Well, it was OK.
 E Were there many people?
 M Yes, there were.
 E Was Paul there?
 M No, he wasn't. And where were you? Why weren't you there?
 E Oh ... I couldn't go because I was at Sergio's party! It was great!
 M Oh!

CD2 16

1. I can hear you, but I can't see you.
2. There are three bedrooms in our house.
3. I don't know where Jill lives.
4. My son lives near the sea.
5. Don't wear that hat, buy a new one!
6. No, I can't come to your party.
7. You were right. Sally can't come for dinner.
8. Their daughter could write when she was three.
9. I know my answers are right.

CD2 17

Operator

International Directory Assistance. Which country, please?

...

And which city?

...

Can I have the last name, please?

...

And the first name?

...

What's the address?

...

The number is 00 1 617 326 1204.

CD2 18

1. A Hello?
 B Hello. Can I speak to Jo, please?
 A This is Jo.
 B Oh! Hi, Jo. This is Nicole. Is Sunday still OK for tennis?
 A Yes. That's fine.
 B Great! I'll see you on Sunday at ten, then. Bye!
 A Bye!
2. A Hello?
 B Hello. Is this Emma?
 A No it isn't. I'll get her.
 C Hello, this is Emma.
 B Hi, Emma. It's Miguel. Listen! There's a party at my house on Saturday. Can you come?
 C Oh, sorry, Miguel. I can't. It's my sister's wedding.
 B Oh, that's OK. Maybe next time. Bye!
 C Bye!
3. A Good morning. Dixons Electrical. How can I help you?
 B Good morning. Can I speak to the manager, please?
 A I'm afraid Mr. Smith isn't in his office at the moment. Can I take a message?
 B No, that's OK. I'll call back later.
 A All right. Good-bye.
 B Good-bye.

CD2 19 see p. 47

UNIT 7

CD2 20

A Who is she?

Oprah Winfrey is a famous American TV talk show host. Forty-nine million people in 134 countries watch her show every week. She lives in California but she also has an apartment in Chicago, where she works. Oprah is one of the richest women in America. She earns millions of dollars every year. She gives a lot of money to charity.

CD2 21 see p. 48

CD2 22

watch/watched

talk/talked

move/moved

interview/interviewed

earn/earned

open/opened

study/studied

start/started

CD2 23

C Oprah the TV star

In 1984 Oprah moved to Chicago to work on a TV talk show called *A.M. Chicago*. She talked to lots of interesting people about their problems. Oprah says, "People's problems are my problems." The show was very successful, so in 1985 it was renamed *The Oprah Winfrey Show*. In 1993 she interviewed Michael Jackson and 100 million people watched the program. Last year she earned \$260,000,000.

In 1998 Oprah started the charity Oprah's Angel Network. This helps poor children all over the world. In 2007 she opened a special school in South Africa, the Oprah Winfrey Leadership Academy for Girls. She says, "When I was a kid, we were poor and we didn't have much money. So what did I do? I studied hard." There are 152 girls at the school, Oprah calls them her daughters—the children she didn't have in real life.

CD2 24

1. A Where did her father work?
 B In a coal mine.
2. A What did her mother do?
 B She cleaned houses.
3. A Who did Oprah live with?
 B Her grandmother.
4. A What did she study?
 B Drama.
5. A When did she interview Michael Jackson?
 B In 1993.
6. A How much did she earn last year?
 B \$260 million.
7. A When did she open the girls school?
 B In 2007.
8. A Did her parents earn much money?
 B No, they didn't.

CD2 25 see p. 50

CD2 26

wanted

loved

acted

looked

danced

retired

earned

liked

CD2 27

beat

became

began

bought

came

got

went

had

hit

invented

left

made

sold

sang

won

CD2 28**1989 The year I was born****J=James, D=Dad, M=Mom**

- J** Dad, tell me about the year I was born. I know you and mom were in Brazil. You had a job there, didn't you?
- D** Yes, that's right. You were born in January, and we left Brazil in April and ...
- J** ... and you went back to the States.
- D** Yes, we did. I got a job in New York.
- M** Yes. The first Bush was President then. Do you remember Robert? He was the father of George W. Bush, James.
- J** I know that, Mom. Who else was in power then?
- D** Well,—um—in Russia Mikhail Gorbachev became President of the Soviet Union and ...
- M** Oh yes, It was the time of the Cold War. Did you know that James?
- J** No, I didn't, Mom!
- D** Yeah, but 1989 was the year the Cold War ended and everything changed.
- M** That's for sure. The Berlin Wall came down between East and West Germany and the world changed. It was an exciting time.
- D** Yeah, 1989 was exciting—in sports too, James. In October the Oakland A's beat the San Francisco Giants in the baseball World Series. But do you know a huge earthquake hit San Francisco right before Game Three started.
- J** No way! Did they stop the game?
- D** They did. They finished it twelve days later. Sixty-seven people died in the earthquake.
- J** That's terrible.
- M** Sure was. Now, what else happened in '89? Weren't computers big news?
- J** Computers were new?
- D** No, no, a lot of people had computers. But the Internet was born in '89—a guy called Tim Berners-Lee invented the World Wide Web. He won \$1.5 million for doing that.
- M** Oh, and James, you like video games. Nintendo began selling Game Boy in '89. They sold 30 million in just three years.
- J** Wow! What else? I mean, what did people watch on TV?
- D** Well, the Simpsons made their television debut. Mom and I didn't like them at first but now ...
- J** And what about music? Who was famous back then?
- D** Let me think. Some bands you know: Depeche Mode, R.E.M., New Kids on the Block ...
- M** Oh, and Madonna sang "Like a Prayer," I loved that. We bought the album.
- J** Wow, that's amazing! She's still famous today. Hey, it was a good year, the year I was born.

CD2 29

orange juice	movie star
train station	birthday card
swimming pool	washing machine
handbag	living room
boyfriend	parking lot
newspaper	

CD2 30

- A** I can't find my handbag.
B Here it is!
A Oh, thank you. Where did you find it?
B In the living room where you left it!
- A** Would you like some chocolate cake?
B No, thanks, just orange juice for me.
A But I made this cake for you.
B Did you? I'm sorry! I don't like chocolate cake.
- A** I have nothing to wear for your boyfriend's party.
B What about your white jeans?
A They aren't clean.
B Well, wash them. You have a washing machine, don't you?
- A** Do you want anything from the store?
B A newspaper, please. *The New York Times*, I think.
A OK.
B Oh, and can you take this letter to the post office?
A Sure.

CD2 31

first	thirteenth
second	sixteenth
third	seventeenth
fourth	twentieth
fifth	twenty-first
sixth	thirtieth
tenth	thirty-first
twelfth	

CD2 32

- April first
- March second
- September seventeenth
- November nineteenth
- June twenty-third
- February twenty-ninth, nineteen seventy-six
- December nineteenth, nineteen eighty-three
- October third, nineteen ninety-nine
- May thirty-first, two thousand
- July fifteenth, two thousand and seven

CD2 33

- January fourth
- May seventh, 1997
- August fifteenth, 2001
- A** It was a Friday.
B No, it wasn't. It was a Thursday.
A No, I remember. It was Friday the thirteenth. July thirteenth.
- A** Oh no! I forgot your birthday.
B It's OK, really.
A It was last Sunday, wasn't it? The thirtieth. November thirtieth.
- A** Hey! Did you know that Shakespeare was born and died on the same day?
B No way!
A Yes. He was born on April twenty-third, fifteen sixty-four, and he died on April twenty-third, sixteen sixteen.

UNIT 8**CD2 34****The photograph****Louis Daguerre from France**

Louis Daguerre was a painter for the French opera. But he wanted to make a new type of picture. He started his experiments in the 1820s. Twelve years later he invented the photograph. He sold his idea to the French government in 1839 and the government gave it to the world. Daguerre called the first photographs "daguerreotypes." They became popular very fast. By 1850, there were 70 daguerreotype studios in New York City.

The windshield wiper**Mary Anderson from the United States**

Mary Anderson often visited New York City by car. In winter she noticed that when it rained or snowed, drivers got out of their cars all the time to clean their windows. In 1903 she began designing something to clean windows from inside the car. People, especially men, laughed at her idea. But they didn't laugh for long. She invented the windshield wiper in 1905. And by 1916 all American cars had them.

The bicycle**Kirkpatrick Macmillan from Scotland**

Long ago in 1490, Leonardo da Vinci drew a design for the modern bicycle. But the first person to make a bicycle was Kirkpatrick Macmillan in 1839. He lived in Scotland, so people didn't hear about his invention for a long time. Twenty years later, another bicycle came from France. In 1895 the bike became cheap and everyone could have one. Now people, especially women, could travel to the next town. It helped them find someone to marry!

CD2 35

- He didn't invent the bicycle. He invented the photograph.
- He didn't give his idea to the French government. He sold it to them.
- She didn't live in New York City. She often visited New York City.
- All cars didn't have windshield wipers by 1916. Only American cars had them.
- Leonardo da Vinci didn't make the first bicycle. Kirkpatrick Macmillan made it.
- He didn't come from France. He came from Scotland.

CD2 36 see p. 58**CD2 37** see p. 59**CD2 38**

- | | |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1. white | 4. answer |
| 2. bought | 5. building |
| 3. night | 6. Christmas |

CD2 39 see p. 59**CD2 40****He's not your type!****C=Claudia, N=Neil****C** A year ago, I had a boyfriend named Stuart,

- I thought he was OK but my friends didn't like him. You know how it goes, "Claudia, Stuart's just so not your type. He's boring." So, what did I do? I broke up with him. And as soon as we broke up, my friends posted my picture on a dating website.
- N Yeah, and that's when I first saw Claudia.
- C But my friends didn't tell me—I mean, I didn't know anything about the website picture! They said they knew I could meet someone better than Stuart.
- N Well, it was lucky for me that Claudia's friends posted her picture. I saw it and wrote to her.
- C Yeah, I started receiving lots of e-mails from people I didn't know. I couldn't understand it! Most of them went into my junk mailbox and I deleted them.
- N But you didn't delete mine. My e-mail went into Claudia's Inbox.
- C Yeah, somehow Neil's got through and I opened it. And for some reason I couldn't stop thinking about him. It was strange because I usually don't meet people online.
- N Well, I didn't know that.
- C So, anyway, he asked me out for a cup of coffee ...
- N ... we met in Starbucks and immediately ...
- C Yeah, immediately everything just clicked. I know it sounds like a movie or something, but it was fantastic. We talked and laughed a lot. By the end of the date we just knew.
- N I guess your friends were right, huh?
- C That's for sure! Poor Stuart, he wasn't my type at all.

Do mothers know best?

E=Eric, L=Lori

- E Our story is easy. We didn't do anything. It was our mothers who did it all!
- L Yes. You see, our mothers are friends. They met one summer by the lake. They both have little summer houses there. And, of course, they talked a lot about their children.
- E ... and they decided that they wanted us to meet.
- L We both thought this wasn't a very good idea!
- E When my mom said to me "I know a nice girl for you," I just thought, "No way."
- L Me, too! You see, my mom did this a lot, and it was usually terrible.
- E But we finally said "OK"—just for some peace.
- L I took my sister with me ...
- E ... and I took my best friend, Steve.
- L But I was so surprised! Eric was wonderful!
- E And of course, I thought the same about Lori. We all had a great time by the lake that summer. And at the end of the summer I knew I was in love with Lori.
- L That was four years ago, and our wedding is in the fall. Our mothers are very happy, and we are, too!
- E Yes. Sometimes mothers know best!

CD2 41 Song: Teacher's Book p. 120

CD2 42

- Happy birthday to you.
Happy birthday to you.
Happy birthday, dear Grandma,
Happy birthday to you.

- A Did you get any Valentine cards?

B Yes, I did. Listen to this.
*Roses are red. Violets are blue.
You are my Valentine
And I love you.*

A Wow! Do you know who it's from?

B No idea!
- A Wake up, Mommy! Happy Mother's Day!

B Thank you. Oh, what beautiful flowers, and a cup of coffee!

A And I made you a card! Look!

B It's beautiful. What a sweet boy!
- A Congratulations!

B Thank you very much!

A When's the big day?

B Excuse me?

A When's your wedding day?

B June 26th. Didn't you get your invitation?
- A It's midnight! Happy New Year everybody!

B Happy New Year!

C Happy New Year!
- A Thank goodness! It's Friday!

B Yeah. Have a nice weekend!

A Same to you.
- A Ugh! Work again. I hate Monday mornings!

B Me, too. Did you have a good weekend?

A Yes, I did. It was great.

UNIT 9

CD3 2

D = Daisy, T = Tom

- D Mmm, I love apple juice. Do you like it Tom?
- T No—it's disgusting. I like soda, ... and I love coffee.
- D Yuck! You don't! You don't drink coffee!
- T Yes, I do. Sometimes my dad gives me some of his coffee—and I love it.
- D Well, that's different ... My dad drinks coffee—I don't like coffee at all. But my mom drinks tea and I love tea.
- T No, I don't like tea, but I like orange juice. It's funny—I like orange juice, but I don't like oranges. I don't like fruit very much at all. Except bananas—I really like bananas.
- D Really? I like all fruit—apples, oranges, bananas, and I love strawberries. And ... what about vegetables, do you like them?
- T No—I don't eat vegetables.
- D What? Never? Not even potatoes? You eat french fries—I know you do.
- T Yeah—OK, I eat potatoes—especially french fries. French fries and hamburgers. I love that for dinner.
- D I don't like hamburgers—my favorite dinner is pasta with peas.
- T Peas—yuck!
- D I like vegetables—especially carrots and peas, oh, and tomatoes. Hey, are tomatoes fruit or vegetable?
- T I don't know. Anyway, I don't like tomatoes—except on pizza with cheese. I love pizza.
- D Me, too.
- T Anyway, I know your favorite food.

- D No, you don't!
- T Yes, I do. It's chocolate—all girls like chocolate!
- D Boys like chocolate too! You ate all those chocolate chip cookies at my house last week.
- T They were cookies. That's different. Anyway—you ate more than me ...
- D No, I didn't!
- T Yes, you did!
- D Didn't!
- T Did!

CD3 3 see p. 63

CD3 4

- Would you like a tuna salad sandwich?
No, thanks. I'm not hungry.
- Do you like Ella?
Yes. She's very nice.
- Would you like a cold drink?
Yes, soda, please.
- Can I help you?
Yes. I'd like some stamps, please.
- What sports do you do?
Well, I like swimming very much.
- Excuse me, are you ready to order?
Yes. I'd like a steak, please.

CD3 5

- Good afternoon. Can I help you?
- Who's your favorite writer?
- What would you like for your birthday?
- Do you like animals?
- Here's the menu, sir.
- Have some ice cream with your strawberries.

CD3 6

- A Good afternoon. Can I help you?

B Yes. I'd like some fruit, please.
- A Who's your favorite writer?

B I like books by John Grisham.
- A What would you like for your birthday?

B I'd like a new bike.
- A Do you like animals?

B I like cats, but I don't like dogs.
- A Here's the menu, sir.

B I'd like a plate of pasta.
- A Have some ice cream with your strawberries.

B No, thanks. I don't like ice cream.

CD3 7

At the market

M = Mom, T = Tom, V = Vendor

- M Tom! Hurry up!
- T Aw, Mom, I don't like shopping.
- M Come on, Tom. I need your help.
- T OK.
-
- V Good morning Ma'am. How can I help you today?
- M Well, I'd like some apple juice, please.
- V How many bottles?
- M Two, please.
- T But Mom, ... I don't like apple juice.
- M Shh Tom. It's good for you. Thank you. Here ... You can carry them.
- T Oh no!
- M And some tomatoes, please.

V No problem. These tomatoes are very fresh. There we are.
 M And I'd like some of that cheddar cheese, please.
 V This one? How much? Is this much OK?
 M That's fine, thanks. And ... is there any whole wheat bread? I can't see any.
 V Sorry, no, there isn't—but there's some nice white bread. Look! It's homemade.
 M Ummm. ...
 T Mom, I really like white bread. Please can we have it?
 M Oh, OK then. Yes, thanks.
 V Anything else?
 T Oh yeah! Mom! Look at those cakes!
 M Shh Tom. ... Um ... oh yes, some apples.
 V How many—one bag or two?
 M Two bags, please.
 T Oh yuck. Can't we have bananas?
 M No, we can't. Here. Take these bags for me.
 T Oh Mom! They're heavy!
 M Thanks. ... How much is all that?
 V Let's see, that's ten dollars and eighty-five cents.
 M Here you are.
 V Thanks. And here's your change.
 M Thanks. Bye!

....
 T Phew! Is that everything?
 M No, ummm, ... I still need ummm ...
 T Mom, not more. I hate shopping!
 M ... need to buy your new sneakers, but if you don't want to ...
 T New sneakers—cool!
 M ... But I thought you didn't like shopping ...
 T Yeah, but ...

CD3 8

My favorite national food Danupol

One dish that is very famous in my country is the pad thai. It's rice noodles mixed with eggs, chili sauce, garlic, and peanuts. Some people like to make it with chicken or pork, but I like it with shrimp! You can find it in many restaurants around the world, but the best pad thai is made by street vendors in Thailand. When I'm back home in Bangkok I always go to my favorite pad thai place and order it with extra fish sauce and lime. Mmmm!

Natalie

Now in my job, I travel the world, and I like all kinds of food ... but my favorite, my favorite is ... um ... I always have it as soon as I come home ... is a big American breakfast. Bacon, eggs, sausage, and of course, pancakes. I love it, not every day, but when I'm at home we have it every Sunday. Mmmm! I'd like it right now. Delicious.

Giulia

We love eating in my country! One of my favorite national dishes is called "bruschetta." This is actually toast, but you make it with special bread. You can eat it with a lot of things, but my favorite bruschetta has tomatoes, garlic, and olive oil on it. In my town there is a "bruscheria." This is a small cafe—selling only toast! It's my favorite place to go.

Sergio

One kind of food that my country is very famous for is meat, especially beef. Everybody eats a lot of meat here. My family eats beef three or four times a week. There are a lot of different beef dishes, but my favorite is "bife de chorizo." This is a big steak! My mom cooks it with tomatoes and chili peppers. Delicious!

CD3 9

1. Would you like some more carrots?
Yes, please. They're delicious.
2. Could you pass the salt, please?
Yes, of course. Here you are.
3. Could I have a glass of water, please?
Do you want bottled water or tap water?
4. Does anybody want more bread?
Yes, please. I'd love some.
5. How would you like your coffee?
Black, no sugar, please.
6. This is delicious! Can you give me the recipe?
Yes, of course. I'm glad you like it.
7. Do you want help with the dishes?
No, of course not. We have a dishwasher.

CD3 10 see p. 69

CD3 11

1. A Can I have a cheese sandwich, please?
B Yes, of course. That's \$1.75.
2. A Could you tell me the time, please?
B It's just after ten.
3. A Can you take me to the station, please?
B Jump in.
4. A Can I see the menu, please?
B Here you are. And would you like a drink to start?
5. A Could you lend me some money, please?
B Not again! How much would you like this time?
6. A Can you help me with my homework, please?
B What is it? Spanish? I can't speak a word of Spanish.
7. A Can I borrow your dictionary, please?
B Yes, if I can find it. I think it's in my bag.

UNIT 10

CD3 12

Who's at the wedding?

A=Alan, M=Mike

- A Mike, I don't know any of these people. Who are they?
 M Can you see that man over there? He's sitting down. That's my uncle George. He's an architect. He works in L.A.
 A Sorry, where?
 M You know, L.A. Los Angeles.
 A Oh, yes.
 M And he's talking to James. He's wearing a blue shirt. He teaches math at a school in San Francisco.
 A He's a teacher?
 M Yes, that's right. Next to him is Fiona. She's drinking a cup of coffee. Fiona's my cousin.
 A And what does Fiona do?

- M She's a writer. She writes children's stories. She's talking to Sue. Sue's wearing a red dress. She works in a hospital. She's a nurse.
 A And who are those two over there? They're eating cake.
 M Oh, that's Bill and John. They went to school with me. They live in Seattle now. Bill is wearing a pink shirt and John is wearing a green shirt.
 A So, ummm ... that's George and James and ... uh ... it's no good, I can't remember all those names.

CD3 13

1. A Whose baseball cap is this?
B It's his.
2. A Whose flowers are these?
B They're hers.
3. A Whose dog is this?
B It's theirs.

CD3 14

1. Who's on the phone?
2. I'm going to the mall. Who's coming?
3. Wow! Look at that sports car. Whose is it?
4. A Whose dictionary is this?
B It's not mine.
5. There are books all over the floor. Whose are they?
6. Who's the most intelligent in our class?
7. Do you know whose jacket this is?

CD3 15

- A Whose tennis racket is this?
 B It's mine.
 A What's it doing here?
 B I'm playing tennis this afternoon.

CD3 16

1. A Whose sunglasses are these?
B They're John's. He's going to the beach later.
2. A Whose shoes are these?
B They're Mary's. She's going dancing tonight.
3. A Whose suitcase is this?
B It's mine. I'm going on vacation tomorrow.
4. A Whose coat is this?
B It's Jane's. She's going for a walk soon.
5. A Whose plane ticket is this?
B It's Jo's. She's flying to Houston this afternoon.
6. A Whose glasses are these?
B They're ours. We're having a party tonight.

CD3 17

"Flying Without Wings"

Everybody's looking for that something
 One thing that makes it all complete
 You find it in the strangest places
 Places you never knew it could be
 Some find it in the faces of their children
 Some find it in their lover's eyes
 Who can deny the joy it brings
 When you find that special thing
 You're flying without wings
 Some find it sharing every morning
 Some in their solitary lives
 You find it in the words of others

A simple line can make you laugh or cry
 You find it in the deepest friendship
 The kind you cherish all your life
 And when you know how much that means
 You've found that special thing
 You're flying without wings
 So impossible as it may seem
 You've got to fight for every dream
 'Cause who's to know which one you let go
 Would have made you complete
 Well, for me it's waking up beside you
 To watch the sunrise on your face
 To know that I can say I love you
 At any given time or place
 It's little things that only I know
 Those are the things that make you mine
 And it's like flying without wings
 'Cause you're my special thing
 I'm flying without wings
 You're the place my life begins
 And you'll be where it ends
 I'm flying without wings
 And that's the joy you bring
 I'm flying without wings

CD3 18

- SP Can I help you?
 C Yes, please. I'm looking for a shirt to go with my new jeans.
 SP What color are you looking for?
 C Blue.
 SP What about this one? Do you like this?
 C No, it isn't the right blue.
 SP Well, what about this one? It's a bit darker blue.
 C Oh yes. I like that one much better. Can I try it on?
 SP Yes, of course. The fitting rooms are over there.
 ...
 SP Is the size OK?
 C No, it's a bit too big. Do you have a smaller size?
 SP That's the last blue one we have, I'm afraid. But we have it in green.
 C OK. I'll take the green. How much is it?
 SP \$39.99. How do you want to pay?
 C Can I pay by credit card?
 SP Credit card's fine. Thank you very much.

UNIT 11

CD3 19

Future plans Jack

When I grow up I'm going to be a soccer player—a really good one. I'm on the school team and I play three times a week. But I'm going to train very hard, every day, so I can be really, really good. First I'm going to play for a Major League Soccer team. Then I'm going to travel all over the world and I'm going to be famous. I'm not going to marry until I'm very old—about 25. Then I want to have two sons. I'm going to play soccer

until I'm 35—that's a very long time. And I'm going to teach my sons to play. I want them to be famous soccer players, too!

Danny Carrick

When I retire next year ... I'm going to retire early ... I'm not going to stay at home and watch TV. I'm going to try lots of new things. First I want to go mountain climbing. In fact, I want to climb Mount Everest, so I'm going to train very hard for that. I'm going to learn to scuba dive, too, because I want to go scuba diving in Australia. There are so many things I want to do! I'm going to travel all over the world, then I'm going to write a book about my adventures. I want to call it *Life Begins at 60!* In my book, I'm going to tell other retired people to try new things, too. You are only as old as you feel!

CD3 20 see p. 78

CD3 21

- A Why is he going to train very hard?
B Because he wants to be a soccer player.
- A How long is he going to play soccer?
B Until he's 35.
- A When is he going to marry?
B Not until he's very old—about 25!
- A How many children is he going to have?
B Two.
- A Who is he going to teach to play?
B His sons.

CD3 22

T=Tony, A=Amanda

- T So, what would you like to do this year, Amanda?
 A What about a beach vacation? That's relaxing.
 T Uh! Relaxing and boring! What about a ski trip?
 A Too dangerous and stressful for me—and expensive.
 T Well, what about camping in Arizona? Camping is cheaper and safer than skiing.
 A Mmmm. Actually, what I'd really like is a week in New York, going sightseeing. New York is such an exciting city.
 T Mmmm! Exciting, yes, but more expensive than other vacations.

CD3 23

- A I think a vacation in Los Angeles is cheaper than a vacation in Miami.
B I don't think so. Los Angeles is much more expensive.
- A I think Boston is smaller and older than New York.
B Well, you're right, Boston *is* smaller, but it's *not* older.
- A A ski trip is going to be more exciting than hiking in the mountains.
B I don't agree. Hiking is much more exciting.
- A I think mountain climbing is much more dangerous than sky diving.
B Really? I think they're both very frightening. I don't think one is safer than the other.

- A Which city do you think is better, Mexico City or Buenos Aires?
B I don't know. I think they're both great. I don't think one is more exciting than the other.

CD3 24

- A Mount Everest is a very big mountain.
B Yes, it's the biggest mountain in the world. Did you know that it's 8,850 meters high?
- A The Lakers are a very famous basketball team.
B Yes, I think they're the best team in the world. I think they're going to win the NBA title this year.
- A The Ritz is a very expensive hotel.
B Yes, it's one of the most expensive hotels in the city.
- A New York's a very cosmopolitan city.
B Yes, it's one of the most cosmopolitan cities in the world. London's also very cosmopolitan.
- A Brad Pitt is a very popular movie star.
B Yes, he's one of the most popular movie stars in America, but I don't like him. Do you?
- A Miss Smith is a very funny teacher.
B Yes, she's the funniest teacher in our school. She's the best, too. But it's so sad, she's going to leave soon.
- A Anna is a very intelligent student.
B Yes, she's the most intelligent student in the class. She's certainly a lot smarter than I am.
- A This is a very easy exercise.
B Yes, it's the easiest in the book. I think they're all pretty easy, don't you?

CD3 25

- A What's the weather like today?
 B It's snowy and it's very cold.
 A What was it like yesterday?
 B Oh, it was cold and cloudy.
 A What's it going to be like tomorrow?
 B I think it's going to be warmer.

CD3 26

- A It's a beautiful day! What should we do?
B Let's play tennis!
- A It's raining again! What should we do?
B Let's stay at home and watch a DVD.

CD3 27

- A It's a beautiful day! What should we do?
B Let's play tennis!
A Oh no! It's too hot to play tennis.
B Well, let's go to the beach.
A I'll get my bathing suit.
- A It's raining again! What should we do?
B Let's stay at home and watch a DVD.
A But we watched a DVD last night.
B Well, let's go to the movies.
A OK. What movie do you want to see?

UNIT 12

CD3 28

S = Steve, R = Ryan

- S Ryan, where are you and Tara going for your honeymoon?
 R Somewhere in Europe, we think. France, maybe, or Spain. I've been to Paris, but I haven't been to Barcelona.
 S Yes, Paris is beautiful. But what about Venice? It's very romantic.
 R Mmm, that's an idea. I've been to Italy, but I've never been to Venice.
 S What about Tara? Where does she want to go?
 R Oh, Tara doesn't mind where we go. She's been to Mexico and Brazil, but she hasn't been anywhere in Europe!

CD3 29 see p. 86

CD3 30 see p. 86

CD3 31

What has Ryan done?

Yes, I've lived in a foreign country—in Japan. I lived in Osaka for a year. I enjoyed it very much. I loved the food. And, yes, I have worked for a big company. I worked for Nissan, the car company, that's why I was in Japan. That was three years ago, then I got a job back in New York. Have I stayed in an expensive hotel? No, never—only cheap hotels for me, I'm afraid, but I have flown in a jumbo jet—lots of times, actually. Oh, I've never cooked a meal for a lot of people. I love food, but I don't like cooking much. Sometimes I cook for me and my girlfriend Tara, but she likes it better if we go out to eat! And I've never met a famous person—oh, just a minute, well not met, but I've seen ... ummm ... I saw a famous politician at the airport once—oh, who was it? I can't remember his name, um ... I've only seen one Shakespeare play, when I was in high school, we saw *Romeo and Juliet*. It was OK. I've ridden a motorcycle though. My brother has one. It's very fast. Fortunately, I've never been in the hospital. My brother has—he fell off his motorcycle! Unfortunately, I've never won a competition. I play the lottery every week, but I've never, ever won a thing!

CD3 32

A honeymoon in Venice

T = Tara, A = Amy

- T We're having a great time!
 A Tell me about it! What have you done so far?
 T Well, we've been to St. Mark's Square. That was the first thing we did. It's right in the center of Venice. We sat outside in the sun and had coffee. We've seen the paintings in the Doge's Palace. It was wonderful. But we haven't climbed up St. Mark's Bell Tower yet. It was too busy. We're going early tomorrow morning.
 A Have you been in a gondola yet?
 T Oh yes, we have! We took a gondola trip yesterday evening. It was so romantic! And we went on a fantastic boat ride along the Grand Canal and we went under the Rialto Bridge! But we haven't walked across it yet. I

want to do that.

- A Wow! You're busy! Have you visited the Murano glass factories yet? Don't forget—I want a glass horse!
 T I haven't forgotten. In fact, we took a boat to Murano island yesterday, and I got your horse. OK?
 A Oh, thank you, thank you! So what else are you going to do?
 T Well, I'd like to go to the beach, you know—at the Lido. It's so hot here! But we haven't really decided what else to do yet. There's so much to see.
 A Oh, you're so lucky! Have a great time. Say hello to Ryan for me!
 T Yeah. Bye, Amy. See you next week at the airport!

CD3 33

1. Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
2. The Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco is the longest bridge in the U.S.
3. The Caspian Sea isn't a sea. It's the largest lake in the world.
4. Singapore is the busiest port in Asia. Ships from all over the world stop there.
5. The Empire State Building in New York was the tallest building in the world for over 40 years.

CD3 34

woods	bridge
farm	mountain
factory	church
field	building
theater	

CD3 35

May I have your attention please? United Airlines flight 823 to Seattle is now boarding at gate 14. Final boarding announcement for United Airlines Flight 823 to Seattle.

American Airlines flight 516 to Los Angeles is delayed for one hour due to weather. We apologize for any inconvenience.

Northwest flight 726 to Detroit is now boarding at gate 4. Northwest flight 726 to Detroit, now boarding, gate 4.

Air Canada flight 98 to Winnipeg is on time and boarding at gate 20.

Delta flight 609 to Atlanta will have a gate change. Please wait in the departure lounge for a further announcement.

Passengers are reminded to keep their carry-on luggage with them at all times. Thank you.

CD3 36

1. A Listen! ... United Flight 823 to Seattle. That's our flight.
 B Did the announcement say gate 4 or 14?
 A I couldn't hear. I think it said 14.
 B Look! There it is on the monitor. It is gate 14.
 A OK. Come on! Let's go.
2. A Can I have your ticket, please?
 B Yes, of course.
 A Thank you. How many suitcases do you have?
 B Just one.
 A And carry-on luggage?
 B Just this bag.

- A That's fine.
 B Oh ... can I have a window seat?
 A Sure ... OK. Here's your boarding pass. Have a nice flight!
3. A Ryan! Tara! Over here!
 B Hi! Amy! Great to see you!
 A It's great to see you, too. You look terrific! Did you have a good honeymoon?
 B Fantastic. Everything was great.
 A Well, you haven't missed anything here. Nothing much has happened at all!
4. A Well, that's my flight. It's time to go.
 B Oh no! It's been a wonderful two weeks. I can't believe it's over.
 A I know. When can we see each other again?
 B Soon, I hope. I'll e-mail every day.
 A I'll call, too. Good-bye.
 B Good-bye. Give my love to your family.

CD3 37 Song: Teacher's Book p. 126

Grammar Reference

UNIT 1

1.1 Verb to be ► Ex. 1

Affirmative

I	am	from the U.S.
He She It	is	
We You They	are	

I'm = I am

He's = He is

She's = She is

It's = It is

We're = We are

You're = You are

They're = They are

Question

Where	am	I	from?
	is	he she it	
	are	we you they	

I'm 20

I'm 20.

I'm 20 years old.

NOT

~~I'm 20 years.~~

~~I have 20 years.~~

1.2 Possessive adjectives ► Ex. 2

What's	my your his her its	name?
This is	our your their	house.

What's = What is

1.3 Question words ► Ex. 3

What is your phone number?

Where are you from?

How are you?

1.4 a/an ► Ex. 4

It's a	ticket. newspaper. magazine.
--------	------------------------------------

It's an	apple. envelope. English dictionary.
---------	--

We use *an* before a vowel.

I'm a doctor.

I'm a student.

NOT

~~I'm doctor.~~

~~I'm student.~~

1.5 Plural nouns ► Ex. 5

- Most nouns add *-s* in the plural.
stamps keys cameras
- If the noun ends in *-s*, *-ss*, *-sh*, or *-ch*, add *-es*.
bus → buses wish → wishes
class → classes match → matches
- If the noun ends in a consonant + *-y*, the *-y* changes to *-ies*.
country → countries party → parties
But if the noun ends in a vowel + *-y*, the *-y* doesn't change.
key → keys day → days
- Some nouns are irregular. Dictionaries show this.
child children person people
woman women man men

1.6 Numbers 1-20

1 one	6 six	11 eleven	16 sixteen
2 two	7 seven	12 twelve	17 seventeen
3 three	8 eight	13 thirteen	18 eighteen
4 four	9 nine	14 fourteen	19 nineteen
5 five	10 ten	15 fifteen	20 twenty

1.7 Prepositions

Where are you **from**?

I live **in** a house **in** Fortaleza.

What's this **in** English?

EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use *am*, *is*, or *are*.

- How _____ you?
- I _____ fine, thanks.
- Patrick _____ my brother.
- We _____ both 23 years old.
- Katie and Paul _____ married.

2 Complete the conversation. Use *my*, *your*, *her*, or *his*.

Ann Hi, (1) _____ name's Ann. What's (2) _____ name?

Nick Hi! (3) _____ name's Nick. This is my sister.

(4) _____ name's Maria.

Ann Hi. This is my brother. (5) _____ name is Tom.

3 Choose the correct question word.

- How* / *What* is your name?
- What* / *How* are you?
- What* / *Where* are you from?

4 Complete the sentences. Use *a* or *an*.

- It's _____ stamp.
- He's _____ teacher.
- It's _____ apple.
- I'm _____ student.
- It's _____ orange.

5 Write the plural form.

- dictionary _____
- student _____
- orange _____
- child _____
- day _____

UNIT 2

2.1 Verb to be ► Ex. 1-2

Questions with question words

What	is her last name? is his job? is her address?
Where	is she are you are they
Who	is Lara? is she?
How old	is he? are you?
How much	is a brownie?

Answers

Jefferson.
He's a police officer.
82 Hill Road.

Mexico.

She's Patrick's daughter.

Twenty-two.

One seventy-five.

Yes/No questions

Is	he she it	young?
Are	you they	married?

Short answers

Yes, he is.
No, she isn't.
Yes, it is.

No, I'm not./No, we aren't.
Yes, they are./No, they aren't.

Negative

I	'm not	
He She It	isn't	
We You They	aren't	

I'm not = I am not (I **amn't**)
He isn't = He is not
She isn't = She is not
It isn't = It is not

We aren't = We are not
You aren't = You are not
They aren't = They are not

2.2 Possessive 's ► Ex. 3

My wife's name is Judy. That's Andrea's dictionary.

2.3 Numbers 21-100

21	twenty-one	30	thirty
22	twenty-two	31	thirty-one
23	twenty-three	40	forty
24	twenty-four	50	fifty
25	twenty-five	60	sixty
26	twenty-six	70	seventy
27	twenty-seven	80	eighty
28	twenty-eight	90	ninety
29	twenty-nine	100	one hundred

2.4 Prepositions ► Ex. 4

This is a photo **of** my family.
It's good practice **for** you.

I'm **at** home. My mother and father are **at** work.
I'm **at** La Guardia Community College.

I'm **in** New York. I'm **in** a class **with** seven students.
I live **with** an American family **in** an apartment.

EXERCISES

1 Complete the questions. Use *What, Where, Who, How much, or How old*.

- _____ are you? I'm 22.
- _____ is Nick? He's at home.
- _____ is this? It's \$40.
- _____ is your job? I'm a teacher.
- _____ is that? It's Alex.

2 Make questions and negative sentences.

- you / are / cold / ? _____
- we / teachers / English / aren't _____
- I'm / from / Italy / not _____
- is / a / she / student / ? _____

3 Rewrite the sentences. Use the possessive 's.

- Jane + book Jane's book
- my friend + bag _____
- my family + house _____
- John + son _____
- Andrea + brother _____
- his wife + name _____

4 Match the numbers.

1. fifty	a. 31
2. twenty	b. 25
3. thirty	c. 20
4. thirty-one	d. 30
5. twenty-five	e. 50

UNIT 3

3.1 Present Simple *he, she, it* ► Ex. 1-3

- The Present Simple expresses a fact which is always true, or true for a long time.

He **comes** from Taiwan. She **works** in a bank.

- It also expresses a habit.

She **likes** playing tennis. He **has** no free time.

Affirmative

He	lives	in Kenya.
She		
It		

Have is irregular.
She **has** a dog.
NOT she **haves**

Negative

He	doesn't live	in Japan.
She		
It		

doesn't = does not

Question

Where does	he she it	live?
------------	-----------------	-------

Yes/No questions

Does	he she it	live	in Kenya? in Japan?
------	-----------------	------	------------------------

Short answers

Yes, he does.
No, she doesn't.
Yes, it does.

3.2 Spelling of the third person singular ► Ex. 4

- Most verbs add -s in the third person singular.
wear → wears speak → speaks live → lives
But *go* and *do* are different. They add -es.
go → goes do → does
- If the verb ends in -s, -sh, or -ch, add -es.
finish → finishes watch → watches
- If the verb ends in a consonant + -y, the -y changes to -ies.
fly → flies study → studies
But if the verb ends in a vowel + -y the -y does not change.
play → plays
- Have* is irregular.
have → has

3.3 Prepositions

She lives **in** Kenya.
He plays tennis **in** his free time.
A nurse looks **after** people **in** the hospital.
He lives **on** an island **in** the west **of** Scotland.
He gets the mail **from** the boat.
He drives the children **to** school.
Tourists come **by** boat.
It's **about** 6:30.

EXERCISES

1 Change the sentences from affirmative to negative.

- Miguel comes from Mexico. _____
- Sandra works in a school. _____
- Bill speaks Japanese. _____
- My sister has two children. _____
- Lucy goes to Greece every year. _____
- Peter studies art in college. _____

2 Make questions.

- study / Harry / Portuguese / at school / does / ?

- does / she / live / where / ?

- does / come / this stamp / where / from / ?

- sports / does / enjoy / she / what / ?

- George / have / dog / a / does / ?

3 Complete the sentences. Use the Present Simple.

- _____ he _____ in Thailand? (live)
- You _____ in a bank. (not work)
- I _____ TV in the evenings. (watch)
- Marta _____ a new boyfriend. (have)
- I _____ Spanish. (not speak)
- _____ Carlos _____ English? (study)

4 Write the third person singular form of the verbs.

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. do _____ | 4. speak _____ |
| 2. watch _____ | 5. have _____ |
| 3. listen _____ | 6. walk _____ |

UNIT 4

4.1 Present Simple ► Ex. 1-2

Affirmative

I		
You	start	
We		
They		at 6:30.
He		
She	starts	
It		

Negative

I			
You	don't		
We			
They		start	at 6:30.
He			
She	doesn't		
It			

Question

	do	I you we they	
When			start?
	does	he she it	

Yes/No questions

Do	you they	have	a camera?
Does	he she it	like	Chinese food?

Short answers

No, I don't./No, we don't.
Yes, they do.
Yes, he does.
No, she doesn't.
Yes, it does.

4.2 Adverbs of frequency ► Ex. 3

0%		50%		100%
never	sometimes	often	usually	always

- These adverbs usually come before the main verb.
She **never** eats meat.
I **sometimes** play tennis on Saturdays.
I **don't often** go swimming.
I **usually** go to bed about 11:00.
We **always** watch TV in the evenings.
- Sometimes* and *usually* can also come at the beginning or the end of a sentence.
Sometimes we play cards. We play cards **sometimes**.
Usually I walk to school. I walk to school **usually**.
- Never* and *always* can't come at the beginning or the end of a sentence.
NOT ~~Never I go to the theater.~~
~~Always I have tea in the morning.~~

4.3 like/love + verb + -ing ► Ex. 4

When *like* and *love* are followed by a verb, it is usually verb + -ing.
I **like** cooking. She **loves** listening to music.

4.4 Prepositions

She gets up early **on** weekdays.
She goes to the gym **on** Friday mornings.
They never go out **on** Saturday evenings.
Do you relax **on** weekends?
She gets up **at** six o'clock.
She gets up early **in** the morning.
We go out **in** the evening.
She goes surfing **in** the summer.

EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use the affirmative form of the verbs in the box.

play go live work speak

- My best friend _____ in Brazil.
- John and Kate _____ Japanese and Korean.
- Nadia often _____ running before breakfast.
- I _____ six days a week.
- My brother _____ the piano.

2 Make questions and short answers. Use the Present Simple.

- he / like / swimming?

No, _____.

- you / have / a computer?

Yes, _____.

- they / live / in Peru?

Yes, _____.

- she / start / at 9:00?

No, _____.

- we / speak / English?

Yes, _____.

3 Put the adverb in the correct place.

- George walks to work. (always) _____
- Sandra watches TV. (never) _____
- You don't go running. (often) _____

4 Find and correct two incorrect sentences.

- Vicky loves listen to the radio. _____
- My sister likes going shopping. _____
- They love reading. _____
- David likes to cooking. _____

5.2 How many ...? ► Ex. 3

How many books do you have?

5.3 some/any ► Ex. 3

Affirmative

There are **some** flowers. *some + plural noun*

Negative

There aren't **any** cups. *any + plural noun*

Question

Are there **any** books? *any + plural noun*

5.4 this, that, these, those ► Ex. 4

We use *this/these* to talk about people/things that are near to us.

I like **this** ice cream.

I want **these** shoes.

We use *that/those* to talk about people/things that aren't near to us.

Do you like **that** picture on the wall?

Who are **those** children outside?

5.5 Prepositions

He lives **in** the south **of** France.

There is a photo **on** the television.

There are two pictures **on** the wall.

The movie theater is **on** the left, **across from** the newsstand.

The bank is **next to** the supermarket.

The bus stop is **near** the park.

There is a mail box **in front of** the post office.

There are magazines **under** the table.

EXERCISES

1 Match the two halves of the sentences.

1. Is there	a. any boys?
2. There are	b. a computer.
3. Are there	c. a letter?
4. There isn't	d. two girls.

2 Make sentences. Use the verb *be* (+, -, or ?).

- (?) _____ there any books?
- (-) There _____ any cake.
- (+) There _____ five glasses.
- (?) _____ there a dictionary?
- (-) There _____ any magazines.
- (+) There _____ a black dog.

3 Complete the sentences. Use *some, any, or many*.

- How _____ apples are there?
- There are _____ photos.
- Are there _____ glasses?
- There are _____ cookies.
- How _____ sandwiches do you want?

4 Choose the correct word.

- I like *this* / *these* clock.
- Do you want *those* / *that* books?
- These* / *this* flowers are beautiful!
- Where is *that* / *those* cafe?

UNIT 5

5.1 There is/are ► Ex. 1-2

Affirmative

There	is	a sofa.	(singular)
	are	two books.	(plural)

Negative

There	isn't	an armchair.	(singular)
	aren't	any flowers.	(plural)

Yes/No questions

Is	there	a table?
Are		any photos?

Short answers

Yes, there is.
No, there isn't.
Yes, there are.
No, there aren't.

UNIT 6

6.1 can/can't ► Ex. 1–2

Can and can't have the same form in all persons.
There is no do or does.
Can is followed by the infinitive (without to).

could/couldn't

Could is the past of can.
Could and couldn't have the same form in all persons.
Could is followed by the infinitive (without to).

Affirmative

I		
He/She/It	can	swim.
We	could	
You		
They		

Negative

I		
He/She/It	can't	dance.
We	couldn't	
You		
They		

NOT He ~~doesn't can~~ dance.

Question

What	can	I	
	could	you	do?
		he/she/it	
		we	
		they	

Yes/No questions

Can	you	drive?
Could	she	cook?
	they	

Short answers

No, I can't./No, we couldn't.
Yes, she can/could.
Yes, they can/could.

NOT ~~Do you can~~ drive?

6.2 was/were ► Ex. 3

Was/were is the past of am/is/are.

Affirmative

I	was	
He/She/It		in Chicago yesterday.
We	were	in Bangkok last year.
You		
They		

Negative

I	wasn't	
He/She/It		at school yesterday.
We	weren't	at the party last night.
You		
They		

Question

	was	I?
Where		he/she/it?
	were	we/you/they?

Yes/No questions

Was	he	
	she	at work?
Were	you	at home?
	they	

Short answers

No, he wasn't.
Yes, she was.
Yes, I was./Yes, we were.
No, they weren't.

was born

	was	she	
Where		he	born?
	were	you	
		they	

I was born in
Brooklyn in 1980.
NOT ~~I am born~~ in 1980.

6.3 Prepositions

I was **at** a party.
Yesterday there was a party **at** my house.
Can I speak **to** you?
He sits **at** his computer **for** hours.

EXERCISES

1 Correct the sentences.

- Tanya can sing, but she couldn't dance.
- Mark could to swim two years ago, but he couldn't ride a bicycle.
- Do you can play tennis?
- What I can do today?

2 Write sentences that are true for you. Use can/can't or could/couldn't.

- I _____ play an instrument.
- I _____ use a computer.
- I _____ fly a plane.
- I _____ cook.
- I _____ ride a bike when I was six.
- I _____ swim when I was two.
- I _____ speak two languages when I was eight.
- I _____ speak my language when I was four.

3 Rewrite the sentences in the past. Use was or were.

- I'm in New York. _____
- They are at a party. _____
- Where are you? _____
- You aren't at school. _____
- She's at home. _____
- Are they in the restaurant? _____
- Where's David? _____
- We aren't at work. _____

UNIT 7

7.1 Past Simple – spelling of regular verbs ► Ex. 1

- The normal rule is to add *-ed*.
worked started
If the verb ends in *-e*, add *-d*.
lived loved
- If the verb has only one syllable and one vowel and one consonant, double the consonant.
stopped planned
- Verbs that end in a consonant + *-y* change to *-ied*.
studied carried

7.2 Past Simple ► Ex. 1–3

The Past Simple expresses a past action that is finished.

I **lived** in Seoul when I was six.

She **started** work when she was eight.

The form of the Past Simple is the same in all persons.

Affirmative

I		
He/She/It	moved	to Atlanta in 1995.
We	went	
You		
They		

Negative

We use *didn't* + infinitive (without *to*) in all persons.

I			
He/She/It	didn't	move	to Atlanta.
We		go	
You			
They			

Question

We use *did* + infinitive (without *to*) in all persons.

When	did	I	
Where		you	go?
		he/she/it	
		we/they	

Yes/No questions

Did	you	like	the movie?
	she	enjoy	the party?
	they		
	etc.		

Short answers

No, I didn't.
No, we didn't.
Yes, she did.
No, they didn't.

There is list of irregular verbs on page 133.

7.3 Time expressions ► Ex. 4

last	night	month
	week	year
	Saturday	

yesterday	morning
	afternoon
	evening

7.4 Prepositions

They talked **about** their problems.

He worked **in** a coal mine.

She worked **for** a radio station.

She went **to** school when she was 20.

She flew **across** the Atlantic.

Are you interested **in** modern art?

EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use the Past Simple.

- I _____ playing football at 5 P.M. (stop)
- She _____ in a cafe last summer. (work)
- You _____ John last week. (not see)
- _____ they _____ to college? (go)
- Sarah _____ in New York in 2002. (live)
- When _____ he _____? (arrive)
- Peter _____ to travel around Europe. (decide)
- Luke _____ two dogs and a cat. (have)
- When _____ the movie _____? (finish)
- They _____ a vacation in Florida. (want)

2 Write the Past Simple of the verbs.

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. walk _____ | 6. write _____ |
| 2. go _____ | 7. study _____ |
| 3. see _____ | 8. run _____ |
| 4. eat _____ | 9. sing _____ |
| 5. become _____ | 10. hear _____ |

3 Write short answers that are true for you.

- Did you watch TV last week? _____
- Did you and your friends go out last weekend? _____
- Did your father teach you to ride a bike? _____
- Did your parents travel abroad when you were a child? _____

4 Put the time expressions in the correct column.

morning	night	afternoon	year	evening	week
last _____		yesterday _____			
_____		_____			
_____		_____			

UNIT 8

8.1 Past Simple ► Ex. 1–3

Negative

Negatives in the Past Simple are the same in all persons.

I/He/She	didn't	go out	last night.
We/You/They		see Tom	

ago

I went to Brazil	ten years/two weeks/a month	ago.
------------------	-----------------------------	------

8.2 Time expressions ► Ex. 4

in	the twentieth century/1924/the 1990s winter/summer/the evening/morning/September
on	October 10/Christmas Day/Saturday/Sunday evening
at	seven o'clock/night

8.3 Prepositions

He started **in** the 1820s.

Only U.S. cars had windshield wipers **by** 1916.

I tried to forget **about** him.

People didn't hear **about** his invention.

People laughed **at** her idea.

I fell **in** love **with** him.

They lived **by** the lake.

EXERCISES

1 Make sentences.

1. Sue / yesterday / to the movies / went

2. ago / I / met / Nick / two years

3. last night / go / they / out / didn't

4. three weeks / Jack / ago / was born

5. Friday / we / last / met

2 Rewrite the sentences. Use the negative form of the Past Simple.

- I watched TV last night. _____
- They traveled by train. _____
- Mary sang in the concert last week. _____
- Pete saw three men outside the bank. _____
- We went to New York in 2002. _____

3 Complete the sentences. Use the Past Simple.

- Nick _____ off his bike. (fall)
- I _____ them an e-mail. (send)
- You _____ my glasses! (find)
- She _____ a cup of coffee. (drink)
- We _____ a new DVD. (buy)

4 Choose the correct preposition.

- They met *on / at / in* June 11.
- Kate was born *in / at / on* the 1980s.
- We play tennis *on / in / at* weekends.
- She bought the apartment *at / on / in* May.
- What did you do *in / at / on* Monday?

UNIT 9

9.1 Count and noncount nouns ► Ex. 1

Some nouns are countable.

a book → two books an egg → six eggs

Some nouns are uncountable.

bread rice

Some nouns are both!

Do you like **coffee**? We'd like three **coffees**, please.

9.2 would like ► Ex. 2

Would is the same in all persons.

We use *would like* in offers and requests.

Affirmative

I		
You	'd like	a drink.
He/She/It		
We		
They		

'd = would

Yes/No questions

Would	you he/she/it they	like a cookie?
-------	--------------------------	----------------

Short answers

Yes, please.
No, thank you.

9.3 some and any ► Ex. 3-4

We use *some* in affirmative sentences with noncount nouns and plural nouns.

There is		bread	
There are	some	oranges	on the table.

We use *some* in questions when we ask for things and offer things.

Can I have		coffee, please?
Would you like	some	grapes?

We use *any* in questions and negative sentences with noncount nouns and plural nouns.

Is there		water?
Does she have	any	children?
I can't see		rice.
There aren't		people.

(I don't know if there is any water. I don't know if she has any children.)

9.4 How much ...? and How many ...? ► Ex. 4

We use *How much ...?* with noncount nouns.

How much rice is there? There isn't much rice.

We use *How many ...?* with count nouns.

How many apples are there? There aren't many apples.

9.5 Prepositions

I have a book **by** John Grisham.

What did you have **for** breakfast?

EXERCISES

1 Write C (count) or N (noncount).

- milk _____
- money _____
- homework _____
- CD _____
- apple _____
- bread _____
- fruit _____
- tea _____

2 Complete the sentences. Use *Would ... like* or *'d like*.

- I _____ a cup of coffee, please.
- _____ they _____ some food?
- _____ you _____ to go out tonight?
- _____ she _____ a drink?

3 Choose the correct word.

- Can I have *any / some* milk, please?
- Do they have *some / any* sandwiches?
- There are *some / any* oranges.
- Would you like *any / some* coffee?
- Are there *any / some* cookies?

4 Complete the sentences. Use *is, are, some, any, much, or many*.

- How _____ sugar is there?
- I'd like _____ water, please.
- _____ there any bread?
- How _____ people did you see?
- There _____ some letters for you.
- Do you have _____ money?

UNIT 10

10.1 Present Continuous ► Ex. 1–2

- The Present Continuous describes an activity that is happening now.
She's **wearing** jeans.
I'm **studying** English.
- It also describes an activity in the near future.
I'm **playing** tennis this afternoon.
Jane's **going** to a party tonight.

Affirmative and negative

I	am	(not) going	outside.
He She It	is		
We You They	are		

Question

Where	am	I	going?
	is	he she it	
	are	we you they	

Yes/No questions

Are you having a good time?
Is my English getting better?
Are they having a party?

Short answers

Yes, we are.
Yes, it is.
No, they aren't.

Spelling of verb + -ing

- Most verbs just add **-ing**.
wear → **wearing** go → **going** cook → **cooking**
- If the infinitive ends in **-e**, drop the **-e**.
write → **writing** smile → **smiling**
- When a one-syllable verb has one vowel and ends in a consonant, double the consonant.
sit → **sitting** get → **getting** run → **running**

10.2 Present Simple and Present Continuous ► Ex. 3

- The Present Simple describes things that are always true, or true for a long time.
I **come** from Taiwan.
He **works** in a bank.
- The Present Continuous describes activities happening now, and temporary activities.
Why **are you wearing** a suit? You usually wear jeans.

10.3 Whose + possessive pronouns ► Ex. 4

Whose ... ? asks about possession.

Subject	Object	Adjective	Pronoun
I	me	my	mine
You	you	your	yours
He	him	his	his
She	her	her	hers
We	us	our	ours
They	them	their	theirs

Whose is this book? Whose book is this? Whose is it?	It's	mine. yours. hers. his. ours. theirs.
--	------	--

10.4 Prepositions

We have this sweater **in** red.
He's talking **to** Mandy.
There's a girl **with** blonde hair.
I'm looking **for** a sweater.
I always pay **by** credit card.

EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use the Present Continuous.

- He _____ math at the university. (study)
- I _____ away this weekend. (not go)
- _____ they _____ ? (work)
- She _____ the party. (not enjoy)
- _____ you _____ Sam tonight? (see)

2 Write the -ing form.

- write _____
- stop _____
- wear _____
- go _____
- dance _____

3 Complete the sentences. Use the Present Simple or Continuous.

- Juan _____ from San Jose. (come)
- I _____ Jo at 6 P.M. tonight. (meet)
- Why _____ you _____ now? (laugh)
- She always _____ nice clothes. (wear)
- We're late! _____ you _____ ? (come)

4 Complete the sentences. Use Whose or Who's.

- _____ books are these?
- _____ standing at the door?
- _____ going to pass the exam?
- _____ pen is this?
- _____ dog is that?

UNIT 11

11.1 going to ► Ex. 1

1. *Going to* expresses a person's plans and intentions.
She's **going to** be a ballet dancer when she grows up.
We're **going to** stay in a villa in France this summer.
2. Often there is no difference between *going to* and the Present Continuous to refer to a future intention.
I'm **seeing** Peter tonight.
I'm **going to see** Peter tonight.
3. We also use *going to* when we can see now that something is sure to happen in the future.
Careful! That glass is **going to** fall!

Affirmative and negative

I	am	(not) going to	take a break. stay at home.
He/She/It	is		
We/You/They	are		

Questions

When	am	I	going to	take a break? stay at home?
	is	he/she/it		
	are	we/you/they		

With the verbs *to go* and *to come*, we usually use the Present Continuous for future plans.

We're **going** to San Francisco next week.
Joe and Tim **are coming** for lunch tomorrow.

11.2 Comparative and superlative adjectives ► Ex. 2-3

	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
One-syllable adjectives	old safe big hot	older safer bigger* hotter*	the oldest the safest the biggest* the hottest*
Adjectives ending in -y	noisy dirty	noisier dirtier	the noisiest the dirtiest
Two or more syllable adjectives	boring beautiful	more boring more beautiful	the most boring the most beautiful
Irregular adjectives	good bad far	better worse farther	the best the worst the farthest

* Adjectives that end in one vowel and one consonant double the consonant.

You're **older than** me.
New York is **dirtier than** Seoul.
Kyoto is one of **the most beautiful** cities in Asia.

11.3 Prepositions

What did he do **as** a child? What's **on** TV tonight?
He grew up **in** the city. I'm going **to** Florida **in** a year.

EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use *going to* (+, -, or ?).

1. (+) Look! It _____ be a nice day!
2. (?) _____ Bill _____ see Dan tonight?
3. (-) I _____ study this weekend.
4. (+) Be careful! You _____ fall.
5. (-) We _____ play football today.
6. (?) _____ you _____ cook dinner tonight?
7. (+) He _____ pass the exam.
8. (-) I _____ work tomorrow.
9. (?) _____ they _____ stay with us?

2 Write the comparative and superlative form.

1. easy _____ → _____
2. boring _____ → _____
3. far _____ → _____
4. noisy _____ → _____
5. nice _____ → _____

3 Put a check next to the correct sentence in each pair.

1. ☐ My computer's bigger than yours.
☐ My computer is more big than yours.
2. ☐ This is the noisiest city I know!
☐ This is the noisiest city I know!
3. ☐ It's the worse movie in the world.
☐ It's the worst movie in the world.
4. ☐ Miami is hotter than Atlanta.
☐ Miami is hoter than Atlanta.
5. ☐ Museums are boringer than parks.
☐ Museums are more boring than parks.

UNIT 12

12.1 Present Perfect ► Ex. 1–4

- The Present Perfect refers to an action that happened some time before now.
She's **traveled** to most parts of the world.
Have you ever been in a car accident?
- If we want to say *when* these actions happened, we must use the Past Simple.
She **went** to Singapore two years ago.
I **was** in a crash when I was 10.
- Notice the time expressions used with the Past Simple.

I left last night/yesterday/in 1990/at three o'clock/on Monday.

Affirmative and negative

I You We They	have	(not) been	to Canada.
He She It	has		

I've been = I have been
You've been = You have been
We've been = We have been
They've been = They have been

He's been = He has been
She's been = She has been
It's been = It has been

been and gone

She's **gone** to Korea. (= she's there now)
She's **been** to Korea. (= now she has returned)

Question

Where	have	I you we they	been?
	has	she he it	

Yes/No questions
Have you been to Colombia?

Short answers
Yes, I have./No, I haven't.

ever and never

We use **ever** in questions and **never** in negative sentences.

Have you **ever** been to Colombia?
I've **never** been to Colombia.

12.2 yet ► Ex. 3

We use **yet** in negative sentences and questions.

Have you done your homework **yet**?
I haven't done it **yet** (but I'm going to).

12.3 Prepositions

She works **for** a big company.
Ryan and Tara are **on** their honeymoon.
Hamlet is a play **by** Shakespeare.

EXERCISES

1 Put a check next to the correct sentence in each pair.

- ☐ I went to Tokyo last year.
☐ I have been to Tokyo last year.
- ☐ Have you ever met a famous person?
☐ Did you ever meet a famous person?
- ☐ Kate's not here. She's been to Boston.
☐ Kate's not here. She's gone to Boston.
- ☐ You have met him when you were six.
☐ You met him when you were six.

2 Complete the sentences. Use the Present Perfect (+, -, or ?).

- (+) He _____ all over the world. (travel)
- (?) _____ you ever _____ this movie? (see)
- (-) We _____ on vacation this year. (be)
- (+) They _____ your letter. (read)
- (?) _____ Bill _____ the laundry? (do)
- (-) We _____ the card yet. (send)

3 Put the adverb in the correct place.

- Have you finished the report? (yet) _____
- I've been to Australia. (never) _____
- Has Tony lived in New York? (ever) _____

4 Write short answers that are true for you.

- Have you ever been to Taiwan? _____
- Have you taken any exams this year? _____
- Have any of your friends ever played in a rock band? _____
- Has your best friend ever lied to you? _____
- Has the class ended yet? _____

Pairwork Activities Student A

UNIT 5 page 33

What's in your picture?

This picture of a living room is not complete. Ask Student B questions to find out where the things in the box go. Draw them in the correct place.

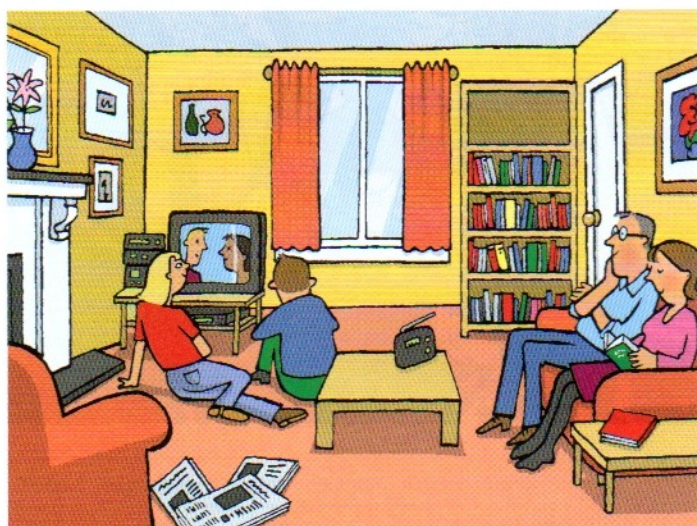
Where's the lamp?

It's on the table.

Where exactly?

Next to the book.

lamp magazines photos plants clock rug



UNIT 6 page 46

On the phone

- 1 You are the operator. Ask questions to find out who your partner wants to call. Start: *International Directory Assistance. Which country, please?*

Country	
City	
Last name	
First name	
Address	

Finish: *The number is 75 842 2209*

- 2 You want to call Alejandro. Answer Student B's questions to get Alejandro's telephone number.

Travel 
Peru

Alejandro Diaz
Tour guide

Jiron Junín 612
Lima PERU

Tel:

email: almdiaz@travel.co.pe

UNIT 8 page 56

Famous inventions

When were things invented? With a partner, ask and answer questions.

When was Coca-Cola invented?

In 1886.

That's . . . years ago.

1. Coca-Cola was invented in 1886.
2. The camera was invented in 1826.
3. The record player was invented in 1877.
4. The first plane was invented in 1903.
5. Jeans were invented in 1850.
6. Hamburgers were invented in 1895.
7. Cars were invented in 1885.
8. The telephone was invented in 1876.
9. The television was invented in 1925.
10. Bicycles were invented in about 1840.

UNIT 8 page 58

Did you know that?

With a partner, make similar conversations.

A Did you know that Marco Polo brought spaghetti back from China?

B Really? That's incredible!

A Well, it's true.

B Did you know that Napoleon was afraid of cats?

A No way! I don't believe it!

B Well, it's true!

Did you know that ...

... Vincent van Gogh sold only two of his paintings while he was alive?

... American TV talk show host Oprah Winfrey could read before she was three?

... Shakespeare spelled his name in eleven different ways?

... in 1979 it snowed in the Sahara desert?

... King Louis XIV of France took a bath only three times in his life?

UNIT 10 page 72

Who's at the party?

Work with a partner. You each have a picture of a party. Talk about the pictures to find ten differences. *Don't* show your picture to your partner!

In my picture three people are dancing.

In my picture four people are dancing.

There's a woman with brown hair.

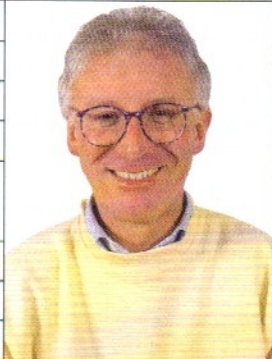
Is she wearing a black dress?



Pairwork Activities Student B

UNIT 2 page 9

Who is he?

Last Name		
First name	Patrick	
Country		
Job	Accountant	
Address		
Phone number	(21) 434 1075	
Age		
Married	Yes	

UNIT 5 page 33

What's in your picture?

This picture of a living room is complete. Student A's picture is incomplete. Answer Student A's questions about the things in the box to help him/her complete the picture.

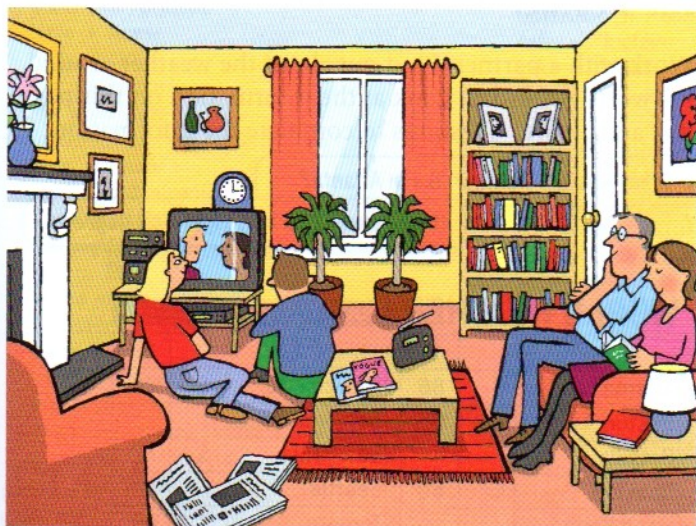
Where's the lamp?

It's on the table.

Where exactly?

Next to the book.

lamp magazines photos plants clock rug



UNIT 6 page 46

On the phone

- 1 You want to call Yoshi. Answer Student A's questions to get Yoshi's telephone number.

Yoshi Ishigawa
BUSINESSMAN

659 Tearaimizu-cho
KYOTO 604-8152
JAPAN

Tel:

email: ishigawa@nkg.or.jp



- 2 You are the operator. Ask questions to find out who your partner wants to call. Start: *International Directory Assistance. Which country, please?*

Country	
City	
Last name	
First name	
Address	

Finish: *The number is 998 764 9832.*

UNIT 8 page 56

Famous inventions

When were things invented? With a partner, ask and answer questions.

When was the camera invented?

In 1826.

That's ... years ago.

1. Coca-Cola was invented in 1886.
2. The camera was invented in 1826.
3. The record player was invented in 1878.
4. The first plane was invented in 1903.
5. Jeans were invented in 1873.
6. Hamburgers were invented in 1890.
7. Cars were invented in 1893.
8. The telephone was invented in 1876.
9. The television was invented in 1926.
10. Bicycles were invented in about 1817.

UNIT 8 page 58 Did you know that?

Did you know that?

With a partner, make similar conversations.

- A Did you know that Marco Polo brought spaghetti back from China?
 B Really? That's incredible!
 A Well, it's true.
 B Did you know that Napoleon was afraid of cats?
 A No way! I don't believe it!
 B Well, it's true!

Did you know that ...

- ... it took 1,700 years to build the Great Wall of China?
- ... Walt Disney used his own voice for the character of Mickey Mouse?
- ... Shakespeare and Cervantes both died on April 23, 1616?
- ... King Francis I of France bought the painting *Mona Lisa* to put in his bathroom?
- ... when Shakespeare was alive, there were no actresses, only male actors?

UNIT 10 page 72

Who's at the party?

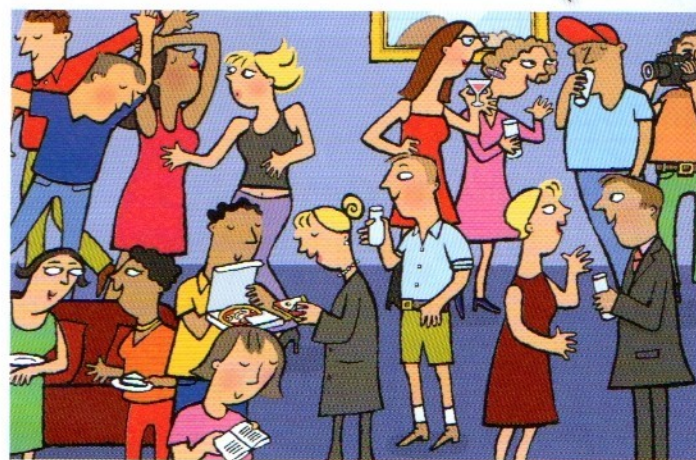
Work with a partner. You each have a picture of a party. Talk about the pictures to find ten differences. *Don't* show your picture to your partner!

In my picture three people are dancing.

In my picture four people are dancing.

There's a woman with brown hair.

Is she wearing a black dress?



UNIT 11 page 84

The weather

Work with a partner. Find out about the weather around the world yesterday. Look at the information on this page. Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

What was the weather like in Atlanta?

It was sunny and hot. Eighty-six degrees.

WORLD WEATHER

		°F
Atlanta	S	86
Boston	C	65
Brasilia		
Denver	C	60
Hong Kong		
London	Fg	59
Los Angeles		

NOON YESTERDAY

		°F
Mexico City	S	77
San Francisco		
São Paulo	S	77
Seattle		
Toronto	C	60
Vancouver		

S = sunny
 C = cloudy
 Fg = foggy
 R = rainy
 Sn = snowy

Word List

Here is a list of most of the new words in the units of *American Headway 1 Student Book*.

adj = adjective
adv = adverb
conj = conjunction
opp = opposite
pl = plural
prep = preposition
pron = pronoun
pp = past participle
n = noun
v = verb
informl = informal

UNIT 1

apartment *n* /ə'pɑ:tmənt/
 apple *n* /'æpl/
 Australia *n* /ə'streɪliə/
 bag *n* /bæg/
 because *conj* /bi'kɔ:z/
 Brazil *n* /brə'zɪl/
 brother *n* /'brʌðə/
 Canada *n* /'kænədə/
 cell phone *n* /sɛl fəʊn/
 camera *n* /'kæmərə/
 China *n* /'tʃaɪnə/
 country *n* /'kʌntri/
 day *n* /deɪ/
 dictionary *n* /'dɪkʃənəri/
 England *n* /'ɪŋɡlənd/
 fine *adj* /faɪn/
 France *n* /frɑ:ns/
 from *prep* /frɒm/
 good-bye /gʊdbaɪ/
 have *v* /hæv/
 hello /həloʊ/
 her *pron* /hər/
 his *pron* /hɪz/
 international *adj* /ɪntə'næʃənl/
 Italy *n* /'ɪtəli/
 Japan *n* /dʒə'pæn/
 just fine /dʒʌst faɪn/
 job *n* /dʒɒb/
 key *n* /ki/
 Korea *n* /kə'riə/
 language *n* /'læŋɡwɪdʒ/
 learn *v* /lɜ:n/
 letter *n* /letər/
 live *v* /lɪv/
 magazine *n* /mægə'zɪn/
 married *adj* /'mærid/
 me *pron* /mi/
 Mexico *n* /'meksɪkəʊ/
 my *pron* /maɪ/
 name *n* /neɪm/
 newspaper *n* /'nju:zpeɪpər/
 nice *adj* /naɪs/

not bad *adj informl* /nɒt bæd/
 orange *n* /'ɒrɪndʒ/
 postcard *n* /'pəʊstkɑ:d/
 Russia *n* /'rʌʃə/
 See you *v informl* /'si yu/
 sister *n* /sɪstər/
 Spain *n* /speɪn/
 spell *v* /spel/
 stamp *n* /stæmp/
 student *n* /'studnt/
 teacher *n* /'ti:tʃər/
 telephone number *n* /'teləfoʊn 'nʌmbər/
 music *n* /'myʊzɪk/
 thank you /'θæŋk yu/
 thanks /θæŋks/
 the U.S. *n* /ðə 'ju es es/
 this *pron* (book) /ðɪs/
 ticket *n* /'tɪkət/
 want *v* /wɒnt/
 what *adv* /wɒt/
 where *adv* /weər/
 your *pron* /jər/

UNIT 2

accountant *n* /ə'kaʊntnt/
 actor *n* /'æktər/
 address *n* /ə'dres/
 age *n* /eɪdʒ/
 American *adj* /ə'merɪkən/
 anything else /'eniθɪŋ els/
 apple pie *n* /'æpl 'paɪ/
 at home *adv* /ət 'hoʊm/
 at work *adv* /ət 'wɜ:k/
 awful *adj* /'ɔ:fl/
 aunt *n* /ænt/
 big *adj* /bɪɡ/
 boyfriend *n* /'bɔɪfrɛnd/
 cafe *n* /'kæfeɪ/
 cake *n* /keɪk/
 Can I have ... ? /kən aɪ hæv/
 Can I help? /kən aɪ 'help/
 cents *n* /sɛnts/
 center *n* /sɛntər/
 chicken *n* /'tʃɪkən/
 chocolate *n* /'tʃɒklət/
 classroom *n* /'klæsrum/
 coffee *n* /'kɒfi/
 cold *adj* /kəʊld/
 daughter *n* /'dɔ:tər/
 different *adj* /'dɪfrənt/
 difficult *adj* /'dɪfɪkəlt/
 dollar *n* /'dɒlə/
 drink *v* /drɪŋk/
 easy *adj* /'i:zi/
 e-mail *n* /'imeɪl/
 exciting *adj* /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/
 expensive *adj* /ɪk'spensɪv/
 family *n* /'fæmli/
 fast *adj* /'fæst/

father *n* /'faðər/
 first name *n* /'fɜ:st neɪm/
 friendly *adj* /'frendli/
 fries *n* /fraɪz/
 funny *adj* /'fʌni/
 girlfriend *n* /'gɜ:lfrend/
 good *adj* /ɡʊd/
 grandfather *n* /'grænfɑ:ðər/
 grandmother *n* /'grænmlðər/
 grilled *adj* /ɡrɪld/
 hamburger *n* /'hæmbɜ:ɡər/
 happy *adj* /'hæpi/
 here *adv* /hɪr/
 Here you are /'hɪr yu ɑ:r/
 hi /haɪ/
 hot *adj* /hɒt/
 how are you? *adv* /haʊ ɑr yu/
 how much? *adv* /haʊ 'mʌtʃ/
 how old? *adv* /haʊ ɔ:ld/
 husband *n* /'hʌzbənd/
 ice cream /aɪs 'krɪm/
 Ireland *n* /'aɪərlənd/
 journalist *n* /'dʒɜ:nəlɪst/
 last name *n* /læst neɪm/
 love *n* /lʌv/
 menu *n* /'menyu/
 mineral water *n* /'mɪnərəl 'wɔ:tər/
 Monday *n* /'mʌndeɪ/
 morning *n* /'mɔ:rnɪŋ/
 mother *n* /'mʌðər/
 near *adj* /nɪr/
 new *adj* /nu/
 nightclub *n* /'naɪtklʌb/
 now *adv* /naʊ/
 nurse *n* /nɜ:rs/
 old *adj* /əʊld/
 orange juice *n* /'ɒrɪndʒ dʒʊs/
 photo *n* /'fəʊtəʊ/
 pizza *n* /'pɪtsə/
 please /plɪz/
 practice *n* /'præktɪs/
 price *n* /praɪs/
 restaurant *n* /'restrɒnt/
 salad *n* /'sæləd/
 sandwich *n* /'sænwɪtʃ/
 sea *n* /si/
 slow *adj* /sləʊ/
 small *adj* /smɒl/
 software designer *n* /'sɒftweər dɪ'zəɪnər/
 son *n* /sɒn/
 soon *adv* /su:n/
 speak *v* /spi:k/
 subway *n* /'sʌbweɪ/
 tea *n* /ti/
 town *n* /taʊn/
 tuna *n* /'tu:nə/
 uncle *n* /'ʌŋkl/
 understand *v* /ʌndər'stænd/
 university *n* /ju:nə'vɜ:səti/
 vacation *n* /veɪ'keɪʃn/
 who? *pron* /hu/
 wife *n* /waɪf/
 write *v* /raɪt/
 young *adj* /jʌŋ/

UNIT 3

a little *adj* /ə 'lɪtl/
 afternoon *n* /æftər'nun/
 ambulance *n* /æmbyələns/
 Arabic *adj* /'ærəbɪk/
 architect *n* /ɑrkətɛkt/
 barman *n* /bɑrmən/
 be quiet *v* /bi 'kwaɪət/
 beautiful *adj* /'byutəfl/
 beer *n* /bɪr/
 before *prep* /bɪ'fɔr/
 boat *n* /bəʊt/
 boring *adj* /'bɔrɪŋ/
 boy *n* /bɔɪ/
 breakfast *n* /'brekfəst/
 building *n* /'bɪldɪŋ/
 businesswoman *n* /'bɪznəs wʊmən/
 busy *adj* /'bɪzi/
 but *conj* /bət/
 Canada *n* /'kænədə/
 Canadian *adj* /kə'neɪdiən/
 chef *n* /ʃef/
 city *n* /'sɪti/
 clock *n* /klɒk/
 clothes *n* /kloʊz/
 come *v* /kʌm/
 concert *n* /kənsərt/
 cook *v* /kʊk/
 court *n* /kɔrt/
 design *v* /dɪ'zain/
 do the accounts *v* /du ðə ə'kaʊnts/
 dog *n* /dɒg/
 drive *n* /draɪv/
 end *n* /end/
 every day /'evri 'dei/
 Excuse me /ɪk'skyʊs mi/
 fire fighter *n* /faɪər faɪtər/
 fly *v* /flaɪ/
 flying doctor *n* /flaɪɪŋ 'daktər/
 free time *n* /fri 'taɪm/
 French *adj* /frentʃ/
 gas *n* /gæs/
 German *adj* /'dʒɜrmən/
 get *v* /get/
 get up *v* /get 'ʌp/
 girl *n* /gɜrl/
 glass *n* /glæs/
 go *v* /goʊ/
 go to bed *v* /goʊ tə 'bed/
 guest *n* /gest/
 help *v* /help/
 hospital *n* /hɒspɪtl/
 hotel *n* /hoʊ'tel/
 hour *n* /'aʊər/
 house *n* /haʊs/
 Hungarian *adj* /hʌŋ'ɡerɪən/
 hurry up *v* /'hʊri 'ʌp/
 island *n* /'aɪlənd/
 just after *adv* /dʒʌst 'æftər/
 just before *adv* /dʒʌst bɪ'fɔr/
 Kenya *n* /'kenyə/
 late *adj* /leɪt/
 lawyer *n* /'lɔɪər/
 like *v* /laɪk/
 listen *v* /lɪsn/
 live *v* /lɪv/
 mail *n, v* /meɪl/

mail carrier *n* /meɪl 'kæriər/
 make *v* /meɪk/
 man *n* /mæn/
 Mexico *n* /'meksɪkəʊ/
 model *n* /'mɒdl/
 movie *n* /'muvi/
 mug *n* /mʌg/
 music *n* /'myuzɪk/
 never *adv* /'nevər/
 non stop *adv* /nɒn stɒp/
 of course /əv 'kɔrs/
 office *n* /'ɒfəs/
 only *adj* /'oʊnli/
 ordinary *adj* /'ɔrdnəri/
 people *n* pl /'pipl/
 perhaps *adv* /pər'hæps/
 pianist *n* /pi'ænɪst/
 pilot *n* /'paɪlət/
 plane *n* /pleɪn/
 play *v* /pleɪ/
 police officer *n* /pə'lis 'ɒfəsər/
 professor *n* /prə'fəsər/
 pump *n, v* /pʌmp/
 radio *n* /'reɪdiəʊ/
 relax *v* /rɪ'læks/
 riding *v* /'raɪdɪŋ/
 school *n* /skul/
 Scotland *n* /'skɒtlənd/
 sell *v* /sel/
 shop *n* /ʃɒp/
 sales assistant *n* /seɪls ə'sɪstənt/
 sick *adj* /sɪk/
 singer *n* /'sɪŋər/
 sit down *v* /sɪt 'daʊn/
 small *adj* /smɒl/
 soccer *n* /'sɒkər/
 Somali *adj* /sə'mali/
 Somalia *n* /sə'maliə/
 Spanish *adj* /'spæniʃ/
 summer *n* /'sʌmər/
 supper *n* /'sʌpər/
 taxi driver *n* /'tæksi draɪvər/
 take care of /teɪk keər əv/
 tea *n* /ti/
 television *n* /'teləvɪʒn/
 tennis *n* /'tenəs/
 That's okay /ðætəs əʊ'keɪ/
 That's right! /ðætəs 'raɪt/
 then *adv* /ðen/
 there *adv* /ðer/
 thing *n* /θɪŋ/
 tired *adj* /'taɪəd/
 too *adv* /tu/
 tourist *n* /'tɔrɪst/
 tour guide *n* /'tɔr gaɪd/
 tourist office *n* /'tɔrɪst 'ɒfəs/
 undertaker *n* /'ʌndərteɪkər/
 vanilla *adj* /və'nɪlə/
 vegetarian food *n* /vedʒə'terɪən fud/
 walk *n, v* /wɒk/
 watch *n, v* /wɒtʃ/
 wear *v* /wer/
 week *n* /wik/
 weekday *n* /'wikdeɪ/
 west *n* /west/
 work *v* /wɜrk/
 world *n* /wɜrld/

UNIT 4

a lot *pron* /eɪ lɒt/
 after *adv* /'æftər/
 always *adv* /'ɔlweɪz/
 autumn *n* /'ɒtəm/
 bad *adj* /bæd/
 beach *n* /bi:tʃ/
 best *adj* /best/
 bus *n* /bʌs/
 car *n* /kɑr/
 Christmas *n* /'krɪsməs/
 clean *v, adj* /kliːn/
 club *n* /klʌb/
 color *n* /'kʌlər/
 computer *n* /kəm'pyʊtər/
 computer game *n* /kəm'pyʊtər geɪm/
 cool *adj* /kuːl/
 cooking *n* /'kʊkɪŋ/
 cousin *n* /'kʌzn/
 dance *v* /dæns/
 dancing *n* /'dænsɪŋ/
 daytime *n* /'deɪtaɪm/
 deposit *n* /dɪ'pɒzɪt/
 dinner *n* /'dɪnər/
 do *v* /du/
 don't worry *v* /doʊnt 'wəri/
 drink *n* /drɪŋk/
 DVD *n* /di vi 'di/
 eat *v* /it/
 England *n* /'ɪŋɡlənd/
 enjoy *v* /ɪn'dʒɔɪ/
 family *n* /'fæməli/
 fast *adj* /fæst/
 fast food *n* /fæst 'fud/
 favorite *adj* /'feɪvərɪt/
 festival *n* /'festɪvl/
 flower *n* /'flaʊər/
 finish *v* /'fɪnɪʃ/
 garden *n* /'ɡɑrdn/
 go out *v* /goʊ 'aʊt/
 go shopping *v* /goʊ ʃɑpɪŋ/
 go jogging *v* /goʊ dʒɒɡɪŋ/
 gym *n* /dʒɪm/
 hard *adv* /hɑrd/
 here *adv* /hɪr/
 hot *adj* /hɒt/
 how? *adv* /haʊ/
 I'm sorry /aɪm 'sɔri/
 interesting *adj* /'ɪntrəstɪŋ/
 joke *n* /dʒʊk/
 late *adj, adv* /leɪt/
 leisure activity *n* /'liʒər æk'tɪvəti/
 long *adj* /lɒŋ/
 lunchtime *n* /'lʌntʃtaɪm/
 mountain *n* /'maʊntɪn/
 near *adv* /nɪr/
 never *adv* /'nevər/
 next *adj* /nekst/
 nice *adj* /naɪs/
 north *n* /nɔrθ/
 Norway *n* /'nɔrweɪ/
 Now I understand /naʊ aɪ ʌndər'stænd/
 often *adv* /'ɒfn/
 oh dear /əʊ dɪr/
 open *v* /'ɒpən/
 orange *n* /'ɒrɪndʒ/

parents *n pl* /'perənts/
 pink *adj* /pɪŋk/
 Portuguese *adj* /,pɔrtʃu'gɪz/
 rainy *adj* /'reɪni/
 reading *n* /'rɪdɪŋ/
 really? /'rɪli/
 red *adj* /red/
 season *n* /'sɪzn/
 skiing *n* /'skiɪŋ/
 snow boarding /snoʊ bɔrdɪŋ/
 sometimes *adv* /'sʌmtaɪmz/
 south *n* /saʊθ/
 special *adj* /'speʃl/
 spend *v* /spend/
 sport *n* /spɔrt/
 spring *n* /sprɪŋ/
 start *v* /start/
 still *adv* /stɪl/
 sunbathing *n* /'sʌnbæɪdɪŋ/
 sunny *adj* /'sʌni/
 surfing *n* /'sɜ:fɪŋ/
 swimming /swɪmɪŋ/
 take *v* /teɪk/
 take photos *v* /,teɪk 'fotooz/
 team *n* /tim/
 Thailand *n* /'taɪlənd/
 ticket *n* /'tɪkət/
 That's OK /'ðæts oʊ'keɪ/
 trip *n* /trɪp/
 traffic *n* /'træfɪk/
 travel *v* /'trævl/
 tropical *adj* /'trɒpɪkl/
 usually *adv* /'yʊʒuəli/
 visit *v* /'vɪzət/
 warm *adj* /wɜ:m/
 waterskiing /wɔtə'skiɪŋ/
 water sports *n* /'wɔtə spɔrts/
 weekday *n* /'wɪkdeɪ/
 What does ... mean? /wʌt dəz '... mɪn/
 what time? /wʌt 'taɪm/
 what? /wʌt/
 when? /wɛn/
 where? /wɛr/
 white *adj* /waɪt/
 why? /waɪ/
 win *v* /wɪn/
 window *n* /'wɪndəʊ/
 windsurfing /'wɪndsɜ:fɪŋ/
 winter *n* /'wɪntər/
 work *n* /wɜ:k/
 year *n* /ɪər/

UNIT 5

address book *n* /ə'dres ,bʊk/
 agree *v* /ə'ɡri/
 all the time /,ɔl ðə 'taɪm/
 any /'eni/
 armchair *n* /'ɑ:mtʃɜ:/
 bank *n* /bæŋk/
 bakery *n* /'beɪkəri/
 bathroom *n* /'bɑ:θrɒm/
 bedroom *n* /'bedrɒm/
 best *adj* /best/
 block *n* /blak/
 book *n* /bʊk/

bookshelf *n* /'bʊkʃelf/
 bookstore *n* /'bʊkstɔ:/
 both *pron* /bəʊθ/
 bread *n* /brɛd/
 briefcase *n* /'brɪfkeɪs/
 bubble *n* /'bʌbl/
 bus stop *n* /'bʌs ,stɒp/
 bus ticket *n* /'bʌs tɪkət/
 cabinet *n* /'kæbənət/
 cake *n* /keɪk/
 cat *n* /kæt/
 Chinese *adj* /,tʃaɪ'nɪz/
 church *n* /tʃɜ:ʃ/
 clock *n* /klɒk/
 closet *n* /'kloʊzət/
 collect *v* /kə'lekt/
 comfortable *adj* /'kʌmfətbəl/
 completely *adv* /kəm'plɪtli/
 computer *n* /kəm'pyʊtər/
 corner *n* /'kɔ:nər/
 cup *n* /kʌp/
 curtains *n* /'kɜ:tnz/
 designer *n* /dɪ'zaɪnər/
 dining room *n* /'daɪnɪŋ rʊm/
 dirty *adj* /'dɜ:ti/
 dog *n* /dɒg/
 drugstore *n* /drʌgstɔ:/
 DVD player *n* /,di vi' di 'pleɪər/
 especially *adv* /ɪ'speʃəli/
 everything *pron* /'evriθɪŋ/
 exactly *adv* /ɪg'zæktli/
 eyes *n* /aɪz/
 far *adv* /fɑ:/
 fireplace *n* /faɪərpleɪs/
 floor *n* /flɔ:/
 fork *n* /fɜ:k/
 front door *n* /,frʌnt 'dɔ:/
 furniture *n* /'fɜ:nɪtʃər/
 future *n* /'fju:tʃər/
 glass *n* /glæs/
 grocery store *n* /'ɡroʊsəri stɔ:/
 home *n* /hoo:m/
 how many? /,haʊ 'meni/
 idea *n* /aɪ'dɪə/
 in front of *prep* /ɪn 'frʌnt əv/
 Internet cafe *n* /ɪntərnet 'kæfeɪ/
 just (= only) *adv* /dʒʌst/
 kitchen *n* /'kɪtʃən/
 knife *n* /naɪf/
 lamp *n* /læmp/
 left *adv* (opp right) /left/
 living room *n* /'lɪvɪŋ ,rʊm/
 lots (of books) /lɒts/
 mail box *n* /'meɪlbɒks/
 mirror *n* /'mɪrər/
 modern *adj* /'mɒdərn/
 most of the time /məʊst əv ðə 'taɪm/
 movie theater *n* /'muvi θiətər/
 music store *n* /'myʊzɪk stɔ:/
 natural *adj* /'nætʃərəl/
 next to *prep* /'nekst ,tu/
 not a lot *adj* /nɒt eɪ lɒt/
 notebook *n* /'nəʊtbʊk/
 on *prep* /ən/
 over there /'oʊvər ðɛr/
 park *n* /pɑ:k/
 pen *n* /pen/

perfect *adj* /'pɜ:fɪkt/
 picture *n* /'pɪktʃər/
 plant *n* /plænt/
 plate *n* /pleɪt/
 radio *n* /'reɪdiəʊs/
 railway station *n* /'reɪlweɪ ,steɪʃn/
 reasons *n pl* /'rɪznz/
 record *n* /'rɛkərd/
 refrigerator *n* /rɪ'frɪdʒəreɪtər/
 room *n* /rʊm/
 round *adj* /raʊnd/
 route *n* /ru:t/
 rug *n* /rʌg/
 sandwich *n* /'sænwtʃ/
 shelf *n* /ʃelf/
 sleep *v* /slɪp/
 sofa *n* /'soʊfə/
 some /səm/
 spoon *n* /spun/
 stamps *n pl* /stæmps/
 stop (bus) *n* /stɒp/
 stove *n* /stəʊv/
 stereo *n* /'sterɪoʊ/
 sunny *adj* /'sʌni/
 table *n* /teɪbl/
 tall *adj* /tɔ:l/
 Thanks a lot! /,θæŋks eɪ lɒt/
 telephone *n* /'teləfoʊn/
 television *n* /'teləvɪʒn/
 think *v* /θɪŋk/
 under *prep* /'ʌndər/
 upstairs *adv* /ʌp'stɜ:z/
 verandah *n* /və'rendə/
 visitors *n pl* /'vɪzɪtərz/
 wall *n* /wɔ:l/
 window *n* /'wɪndəʊ/
 yard *n* /jɑ:rd/

UNIT 6

advertisement *n* /ædvər'taɪzmənt/
 all right /ɔl 'raɪt/
 at the moment /ət ðə 'moʊmənt/
 believe *v* /brɪ'liv/
 bestseller *n* /best'sɛlər/
 (the) blues *n* /ðə 'blʊz/
 can't stop *v* /,kʌnt 'stɒp/
 character *n* /'kærəktər/
 check *v* /tʃɛk/
 conversation *n* /kʌnvər'seɪʃn/
 countryside *n* /'kʌntrɪsaɪd/
 do homework *v* /,du 'hoo:mwɜ:k/
 draw *v* /drɔ:/
 drive *v* /draɪv/
 drums *n* /drʌmz/
 eye *n* /aɪ/
 fall in love *v* /fɔl ɪn 'lʌv/
 fantastic *adj* /fæn'tæstɪk/
 fantasy *n* /'fæntəsi/
 fax number *n* /'fæks ,nʌmbər/
 feel *v* /fi:l/
 flamenco *n* /flə'mençəʊ/
 foreign *adj* /'fɔ:rən/
 genius *n* /'dʒɪniəs/
 golf *n* /gʌlf/
 great *adj* /ɡreɪt/

hear *v* /hɪr/
 head *n* /hed/
 hour *n* /'aʊər/
 I'm afraid /aɪm ə'freɪd/
 initial *n* /'ɪnɪʃl/
 interview *n* /'ɪntərvju/
 Japanese *adj* /dʒæpə'nɪz/
 job *n* /dʒɒb/
 know *v* /noʊ/
 last month *adv* /læst mʌnθ/
 later *adv* /'leɪtər/
 laugh *v* /læf/
 little *adj* /'lɪtl/
 look forward to *v* /,lʊk 'fɔrwəd tə/
 magic *n* /'mædʒɪk/
 manager *n* /'mænɪdʒər/
 message *n* /'mesɪdʒ/
 no one *n* /'nəʊwʌn/
 note *n* /noʊt/
 now *adv* /noʊ/
 number one *n* /nʌmbər wʌn/
 paint *v* /peɪnt/
 parking lot *n* /'pɑrkɪŋ lɒt/
 party *n* /'pɑrti/
 play *n* /pleɪ/
 poetry *n* /'pɒətri/
 pop music *n* /pɒp 'myuzɪk/
 prefer *v* /prɪ'fɛər/
 read *v* /rɪd/
 really *adv* /'rɪli/
 receptionist *n* /rɪ'sepʃnɪst/
 river *n* /'rɪvər/
 sea *n* /si/
 see *v* /si/
 sell *v* /sel/
 shy *adj* /ʃaɪ/
 sing *v* /sɪŋ/
 sit *v* /sɪt/
 so *adj* /soʊ/
 soul singer *n* /səʊl sɪŋər/
 spelling *n* /'spɛlɪŋ/
 spend *v* /'spend/
 stop *v* /stɒp/
 story *n* /'stɔri/
 suddenly *adv* /'sʌdnli/
 surprised *adj* /sər'praɪzd/
 surprising *adj* /sər'praɪzɪŋ/
 swim *v* /swɪm/
 talented *adj* /'tæləntɪd/
 teenager *n* /'tiːneɪdʒər/
 theater *n* /'θiətər/
 today *adv* /tə'deɪ/
 translate *v* /trænz'leɪt/
 until *conj* /ən'tɪl/
 use *v* /yuz/
 very *adv* /'veri/
 very well *adv* /,veri 'wel/
 village *n* /'vɪlɪdʒ/
 voice *n* /vɔɪs/
 was born *v* /wəz bɔrn/
 wear *v* /weər/
 wedding *n* /'wedɪŋ/
 well *adv* /wel/
 worried *adj* /'wɔrɪd/
 yesterday *adv* /'jestədeɪ/
 yesterday evening *adv* /'jestədeɪ 'ɪvɪnɪŋ/

UNIT 7

act *v* /ækt/
 activity *n* /æk'tɪvəti/
 airplane *n* /'ɛrpleɪn/
 after that *adv* /'æftər 'ðæt/
 agree *v* /ə'ɡri/
 air show *n* /er ʃoʊ/
 another *pron* /ə'nʌðər/
 April *n* /'eɪprəl/
 astronaut *n* /'æstrənɒt/
 at that moment /ət 'ðæt 'məʊmənt/
 athlete *n* /'æθlɪt/
 Atlantic *n* /ət'læntɪk/
 become *v* /bɪ'kʌm/
 begin *v* /brɪ'ɡɪn/
 birthday *n* /'bɜrθdeɪ/
 break a record /breɪk eɪ 'rɛkərd/
 crash *n* /kræʃ/
 career *n* /kə'riər/
 century *n* /'sentʃəri/
 champion *n* /'tʃæmpiən/
 change *v* /tʃeɪndʒ/
 Christmas Day *n* /,krɪsməs 'deɪ/
 Congratulations!
 /kɒŋgrætʃə'leɪʃnz/
 countryside *n* /'kʌntrɪsaɪd/
 dangerous *adj* /'deɪndʒərəs/
 decide *v* /dɪ'saɪd/
 die *v* /daɪ/
 disappear *v* /dɪsə'pɪər/
 earn *v* /ɜrn/
 end *n, v* /end/
 Europe *n* /'yʊərəp/
 everybody *pron* /'evrɪbɒdi/
 excellent *adj* /'eksələnt/
 experience *n* /ɪk'spɪəriəns/
 famous *adj* /'feɪməs/
 farm *n* /fɑrm/
 fighter jet *n* /'faɪtər dʒet/
 movie star *n* /'muvi stɑr/
 film studio *n* /fɪlm 'stɜdiəʊ/
 finally *adv* /'fʌmli/
 first (... next) *adv* /fɜrst/
 flight *n* /flaɪt/
 foreign minister *n* /'fɔrən 'mɪnɪstər/
 fortunately *adv* /'fɔrtʃənətli/
 guitar *n* /ɡɪtɑr/
 handbag *n* /'hændbæg/
 immediately *adv* /ɪ'mɪdiətli/
 important *adj* /ɪm'pɔrtnt/
 Independence Day *n* /ɪndɪ'pendəns, deɪ/
 join *v* /dʒɔɪn/
 June *n* /dʒun/
 later *adv* /leɪtər/
 leader *n* /'liːdər/
 leave *v* /liv/
 life *n* /laɪf/
 march *n* /mɑrtʃ/
 marry *v* /'mæri/
 meal *n* /mil/
 medal *n* /'medl/
 million *n* /'mɪljən/
 money *n* /'mʌni/
 Mother's Day *n* /'mʌðərz 'deɪ/
 nearly *adv* /'nɪrli/
 news *n* /nuːz/
 November *n* /noʊ'vembər/

olympics *n* /ə'lɪmpɪks/
 over *prep* /'oʊvər/
 orange juice *n* /'ɔrɪndʒ dʒʊs/
 own *v* /oʊn/
 Pacific Ocean *n* /pə'sɪfɪk 'oʊʃn/
 parking lot *n* /'pɑrkɪŋ lɒt/
 personal computer *n* /pɜrsənl kəm'pyutər/
 pilot *n* /'paɪlət/
 politician *n* /pə'lə'tɪʃn/
 politics *n* /'pɒlətɪks/
 popular *adj* /'pɒpyələr/
 present (= birthday) *n* /'preznt/
 president *n* /'prezədənt/
 public *n* /'pʌblɪk/
 remember *v* /rɪ'membər/
 retire *v* /rɪ'taɪər/
 rich *adj* /rɪtʃ/
 satellite *n* /'sætlaɪt/
 secret *adj* /'sɪkrət/
 sell *v* /sel/
 September *n* /sep'tembər/
 shoes *n* /ʃʊz/
 short *adj* /ʃɔrt/
 sleep *v* /slɪp/
 soon *adv* /suːn/
 space *n* /speɪs/
 star *n* /stɑr/
 study *v* /'stʌdi/
 subject (school) *n* /'sʌbdʒekt/
 sure *adj* /ʃʊr/
 survive *v* /sər'vaɪv/
 take a vacation *v* /teɪk eɪ ver'keɪʃn/
 temple *n* /'tempəl/
 test flight *n* /'test flaɪt/
 test pilot *n* /'test paɪlət/
 thank goodness /θæŋk 'ɡʊdnəs/
 think *v* /θɪŋk/
 tomorrow *adv* /tə'morəʊ/
 war *n* /wɔr/
 win *v* /wɪn/

UNIT 8

advice *v* /əd'vaɪs/
 afraid *adj* /ə'freɪd/
 (3 years) ago *adv* /ə'ɡoʊ/
 all the time *adv* /ɔl ðə 'taɪm/
 arrive *v* /ə'raɪv/
 (coffee) break *n* /breɪk/
 bicycle *n* (bike) /'baɪsɪkl/
 birthday *n* /'bɜrθdeɪ/
 call *v* /kɔl/
 Christmas Day *n* /,krɪsməs 'deɪ/
 couple *n* pl /'kʌpl/
 cry *v* /kraɪ/
 date *n* /deɪt/
 design *n* /drɪ'zeɪn/
 driver *n* /'draɪvər/
 easy *adj* /'izi/
 Easter Day *n* /'istər 'deɪ/
 everyone *n* /'evriwʌn/
 experiment *n* /ɪk'sperɪmənt/
 fall *n* US (autumn) /fɔl/
 fall in love *v* /fɔl ɪn lʌv/
 feelings *n* pl /'fiːlɪŋz/
 forget *v* /fər'ɡet/

get engaged *v* /,ɡet m'geɪdʒd/
 get married *v* /,ɡet 'mæɪrɪd/
 give *v* /ɡɪv/
 Good luck! /,ɡʊd 'lʌk/
 government *n* /'ɡʌvənmənt/
 green *adj* /ɡrɪn/
 Halloween *n* /,hælə'wɪn/
 horse *n* /hɔːs/
 idea *n* /aɪ'diə/
 in a hurry /,ɪn ə 'hʌrɪ/
 incredible *adj* /ɪn'kredəbl/
 inside *prep* /ɪn'saɪd/
 invent *v* /ɪn'vent/
 invention *n* /ɪn'venʃn/
 invitation *n* /ɪnvə'teɪʃn/
 jeans *n pl* /dʒiːnz/
 laugh *v* /læf/
 long ago *adv* /lɒŋ ə'ɡoʊ/
 midnight *n* /'mɪdnɑːt/
 mistake *n* /mɪ'steɪk/
 Mother's Day *n* /'mʌðəz deɪ/
 New Year's Eve *n* /nu ɪəz ɪv/
 notice *v* /'nəʊtɪs/
 nowadays *adv* /'naʊədeɪz/
 opera *n* /'ɒprə/
 painter *n* /'peɪntər/
 phone call *n* /foʊn ,kɔːl/
 same to you /seɪm tə yu/
 semester *n* /sə'mestər/
 send *v* /send/
 snow *n* /snoʊ/
 spaghetti *n* /spə'ɡeti/
 studio *n* /'stʊdiəʊ/
 sweet *n* /swiːt/
 Thanksgiving *n* /θæŋks'ɡrɪvɪŋ/
 tomorrow *n* /tə'məroʊ/
 type *n, v* /taɪp/
 unhappy *adj* /ʌn'hæpi/
 Valentine's Day *n* /'væləntaɪnz deɪ/
 wedding day *n* /'wedɪŋ deɪ/
 windshield wiper *n* /'wɪndfɪld 'waɪpər/

UNIT 9

all sorts *n pl* /'ɔːl sɔːrts/
 anybody *pron* /'enɪbədi/
 anything else? /'eniθɪŋ els/
 anyway *adv* /'eniweɪ/
 apple juice *n* /'æpl dʒʊs/
 away from *adv* /ə'weɪ frəm/
 bacon *n* /'beɪkən/
 banana *n* /bə'nænə/
 beef *n* /bɪf/
 book *v* /bʊk/
 borrow *v* /'bɒrəʊ/
 bottle *n* /'bɒtl/
 box *n* /bɒks/
 bread *n* /brɛd/
 carrot *n* /'kærət/
 central *adj* /'sentrəl/
 check in/out *v* /tʃek 'ɪn/'aʊt/
 cheese *n* /tʃiːz/
 chicken *n* /'tʃɪkən/
 Chile *n* /'tʃɪli/
 chili *n* /'tʃɪli/
 China *n* /'tʃaɪnə/
 Chinese *adj* /tʃaɪ'nɪz/

chocolate *n* /tʃɒklət/
 chopsticks *n pl* /'tʃɒpstɪks/
 close *v* /kloʊs/
 coffee *n* /'kɒfi/
 control *v* /kən'troʊl/
 cookie *n* /'kʊki/
 course (of a meal) *n* /kɔːrs/
 cream *n* /krem/
 delicious *adj* /dɪ'lɪʃəs/
 depend *v* /dɪ'pend/
 dessert *n* /dɪ'zɜːt/
 disgusting *adj* /dɪs'ɡʌstɪŋ/
 dollar *n* /'dɒlə/
 double room *n* /,dʌbl 'rʊm/
 egg *n* /eg/
 either *adv* /'iðər/
 environment *n* /en'vaɪənmənt/
 especially *adv* /ɪ'speʃəli/
 farm *v* /fɑːm/
 finger *n* /'fɪŋɡər/
 fish *n* /fɪʃ/
 for example /fər ɪɡ'zæmpl/
 foreign *adj* /'fɔːrən/
 fruit *n* /fruːt/
 full *adj* /fʊl/
 garlic *n* /'ɡɑːlɪk/
 glad *adj* /glæd/
 history *n* /'hɪstri/
 homework *n* /'həʊmwɜːk/
 horrible *adj* /'hɒrəbl/
 human *adj* /'hjuːmən/
 hungry *adj* /'hʌŋɡri/
 land *n* /lænd/
 lend *v* /lend/
 lunch *n* /lʌntʃ/
 main (meal) *adj* /meɪn/
 meat *n* /miːt/
 menu *n* /'menyu/
 (the) Middle East *n* /ðə ,mɪdl 'iːst/
 milk *n* /mɪlk/
 move on *v* /muːv 'ɒn/
 mushroom *n* /'mʌʃrʊm/
 noodles *n pl* /'nuːdlz/
 north *n* /nɔːθ/
 orange *n* /'ɒrɪndʒ/
 part (of the world) *n* /pɑːt/
 pass (= give) *v* /pæs/
 pasta *n* /'pastə/
 pea *n* /piː/
 pancakes *n* /'pænkɪks/
 poor *adj* /pʊr/
 possible *adj* /'pɒsəbl/
 potatoes *n pl* /pə'tetəʊz/
 pound *n, v* /paʊnd/
 recipe *n* /'resəpi/
 rice *n* /raɪs/
 right now *adv* /raɪt 'naʊ/
 salt *n* /sɔːlt/
 seafood *n* /'siːfʊd/
 shopping list *n* /ʃɒpɪŋ ,lɪst/
 single room *n* /,sɪŋɡl 'rʊm/
 soda *n* /'soʊdə/
 south *n* /saʊθ/
 bottled water *n* /'bɒtlɪd 'wɔːtər/
 tap water *n* /tæp 'wɔːtər/
 strawberry *n* /'strɒberi/
 sugar *n* /'ʃʊɡər/
 table *n* /'teɪbl/
 Taiwanese *adj* /taɪwaɪnɪz/

tea *n* /ti/
 Thailand *n* /taɪlənd/
 toast *n* /toʊst/
 together *adv* /tə'ɡeðər/
 tomato *n* /tə'metəʊ/
 transport *v* /træn'spɔːt/
 tuna *n* /'tuːnə/
 typical *adj* /'tɪpɪkl/
 vegetable *n* /'vedʒtəbl/
 yogurt *n* /'jʊʊɡərt/
 yours faithfully /jɔːz 'feɪθflɪ/

UNIT 10

backyard *n* /'bæk'jɑːd/
 baseball cap *n* /'beɪsbɔːl ,kæp/
 bicycle *n* /'baɪsaɪkl/
 blonde *n, adj* /blɒnd/
 fitting rooms *n pl* /'fɪtɪŋ rʊmz/
 cherish *v* /'tʃerɪʃ/
 chewing gum *n* /'tʃʊɪŋ ,ɡʌm/
 choose *v* /tʃʊz/
 coat *n* /koʊt/
 credit card *n* /'kredɪt kɑːd/
 dark *adj* /dɑːk/
 deny *v* /dɪ'naɪ/
 dog *n* /dɒɡ/
 dress *n* /dres/
 flowers *n* /flaʊərs/
 fresh *adj* /freʃ/
 good-looking *adj* /,ɡʊd'lʊkɪŋ/
 gray *n, adj* /ɡreɪ/
 hair *n* /heər/
 handsome *adj* /'hænsəm/
 happiness *n* /'hæpɪnəs/
 hat *n* /hæt/
 jacket *n* /dʒækət/
 joy *n* /dʒɔɪ/
 kiss *v* /kɪs/
 long *adj* /lɒŋ/
 pants *n* /pænts/
 pay *v* /peɪ/
 shirt *n* /ʃɜːt/
 shoe *n* /ʃu/
 shorts *n pl* /ʃɔːts/
 size *n* /saɪz/
 skateboard *n* /'skeɪtbɔːd/
 skirt *n* /skɜːt/
 smile *v* /smaɪl/
 sneakers *n* /'sniːkərs/
 soccer ball *n* /'sɒkər bɔːl/
 solitary *adj* /'sɒləteri/
 something *n* /'sʌmθɪŋ/
 suit *n* /sut/
 suitcase *n* /'sutkeɪs/
 sunglasses *n pl* /'sʌŋɡləsɪz/
 sunrise *n* /'sʌnraɪz/
 sweater *n* /'swetər/
 T-shirt *n* /'tɪʃɜːt/
 talk *v* /tɔːk/
 tennis racket *n* /'tenəs 'ræket/
 try on *v* /traɪ ɒn/
 umbrella *n* /ʌm'brelə/
 whose? *pron* /hʊz/
 wing *n* /wɪŋ/

UNIT 11

adventure *n* /əd'ventʃər/
 art *n* /ɑrt/
 bathing suit *n* /bəθɪŋ sut/
 bottom *n* /batəm/
 breath *n* /breθ/
 breathe *v* /brið/
 calm *adj* /kɑm/
 catch (a bus) *v* /kætʃ/
 climb *v* /klaɪm/
 cloudy *adj* /'klaʊdi/
 continue *v* /kən'tɪnyu/
 cool *adj* /ku:l/
 conservation *n* /kənsə'veɪʃn/
 (18) degrees *n pl* /di'grɪz/
 deep *adj* /di:p/
 discover *v* /dɪs'kʌvər/
 drive *v* /draɪv/
 due (a baby) *adj* /du:/
 fall *v* /fɔl/
 foggy *adj* /'fɒgi/
 free diving *n* /'fri daɪvɪŋ/
 free running *n* /'fri rʌnɪŋ/
 freedom *n* /'frɪdəm/
 grow up *v* /,grəʊ 'ʌp/
 gymnastics *n* /dʒɪm'næstɪks/
 join *v* /dʒɔɪn/
 jump *v* /dʒʌmp/
 lion *n* /'laɪən/
 meeting *n* /'mi:tɪŋ/
 meter *n* /'mɪtər/
 move *n* /mu:v/
 outside *prep* /'aʊtsaɪd/
 oxygen *n* /'ɒksɪdʒən/
 pain *n* /peɪn/
 peace *n* /pi:s/
 philosophy *n* /fə'ləsəfi/
 plan *n, v* /plæn/
 quiet *adj* /'kwaɪət/
 rainforest *n* /reɪnfɔrɪst/
 retire *v* /rɪ'taɪər/
 roof *n* /ru:f/
 safe *adj* /seɪf/
 scuba dive *v* /'skubədaɪv/
 sneeze *v* /snɪz/
 snowy *adj* /'snəʊi/
 stay *v* /steɪ/
 suggestion *n* /səg'dʒestʃən/
 try *v* /traɪ/
 umbrella *n* /ʌm'brelə/
 underwater *adj, adv*
 /ʌndər'wɔtər/
 view *n* /vyu/
 weather *n* /'weðər/
 windy *adj* /'wɪndi/

UNIT 12

abroad *adv* /ə'brɔd/
 airport *n* /'erpɔrt/
 attack *v* /ə'tæk/
 announcement *n* /ə'naʊnsmənt/
 arrival area *n* /ə'raɪvl 'eɪrɪə/
 board *v* /bɔrd/
 boarding pass *n* /bɔrdɪŋ pæs/
 boat ride *n* /'bəʊt ,raɪd/
 business class *n* /'bɪznəs klæs/
 cart *n, v* /kɑrt/
 carry-on luggage *n* /'kæri ɒn 'lʌɡɪdʒ/
 check in *v* /tʃek ɪn/
 check-in counter *n* /tʃek ɪn 'kaʊntər/
 comfort *n* /'kʌmfərt/
 competition *n* /kəmpe'tɪʃn/
 cycle *v* /'saɪkl/
 deliver *v* /dɪ'lɪvər/
 departure gate *n* /dɪ'pɑrtʃər ,geɪt/
 departure lounge *n* /dɪ'pɑrtʃər ,laʊndʒ/
 excellent *adj* /'eksələnt/
 execute *v* /'eksəkyut/
 flag *n* /flæg/
 flight *n* /flaɪt/
 fly *v* /flaɪ/
 gate (in an airport) *n* /geɪt/
 (the) Government *n* /'gʌvənmənt/
 hand luggage *n* /'hænd ,lʌɡɪdʒ/
 hearse *n* /hɔrs/
 hitchhike *v* /'hɪtʃ,hɑɪk/
 honeymoon *n* /'hʌnɪmʊn/
 horse and cart *n* /hɔrs ənd kɑrt/
 hurt *v* /hɜrt/
 jumbo jet *n* /'dʒʌmbəʊ dʒet/
 kill *v* /kɪl/
 knee *n* /ni/
 last call *n* /,læst 'kɔl/
 lie *v* /laɪ/
 lift *n* /lɪft/
 locust *n* /ləʊkəst/
 loud *adj* /laʊd/
 luggage *n* /'lʌɡɪdʒ/
 mad *adj* /mæd/
 miss *v* /mɪs/
 monitor *n, v* /'mɒnɪtər/
 motorcycle *n* /'məʊtəsaɪkl/
 now boarding /,naʊ bɔrdɪŋ/
 pack (a bag) *v* /pæk/
 passenger *n* /'pæsɪndʒər/
 passport control *n* /'pæsɔrt kən'trəʊl/
 elementary school *n*
 /'elə'mentəri skul/
 (the) Pyramids *n pl* /ðə 'pɪrəməɪdz/
 quarrel *n* /'kwɔrəl/
 reason *n* /'ri:zn/
 retired *adj* /rɪ'taɪərd/
 seat *n* /si:t/
 stay *v* /steɪ/
 three-course (meal) *n* /θri kɔrs 'mil/
 tornado *n* /tɔr'neɪdoo/
 waste (of time) *v* /'weɪst/

Irregular Verbs

Base form	Past Simple	Past participle
be	was/were	been
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
can	could	been able
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone/been
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hit	hit	hit
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read /rid/	read /red/	read /red/
ride	rode	ridden
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Verb Patterns

Verb + -ing	
like	swimming
love	
enjoy	cooking
hate	
finish	
stop	

Verb + to + infinitive	
choose	to go
decide	
forget	
manage	
promise	
need	
help	to work
hope	
try	
want	
would like	
would love	

Verb + -ing or to + infinitive	
begin	raining/to rain
start	

Modal auxiliary verbs	
can	go arrive
could	
will	
would	

Phonetic Symbols

Consonants

1	/p/	as in	pen /pɛn/
2	/b/	as in	big /bɪg/
3	/t/	as in	tea /ti/
4	/d/	as in	do /du/
5	/k/	as in	cat /kæt/
6	/g/	as in	go /goʊ/
7	/f/	as in	five /faɪv/
8	/v/	as in	very /'veri/
9	/s/	as in	son /sʌn/
10	/z/	as in	zoo /zu/
11	/l/	as in	live /lɪv/
12	/m/	as in	my /maɪ/
13	/n/	as in	nine /naɪn/
14	/h/	as in	happy /'hæpi/
15	/r/	as in	red /rɛd/
16	/y/	as in	yes /yes/
17	/w/	as in	want /wɒnt/
18	/θ/	as in	thanks /θæŋks/
19	/ð/	as in	the /ðə/
20	/ʃ/	as in	she /ʃi/
21	/ʒ/	as in	television /'telɪvɪʒn/
22	/tʃ/	as in	child /tʃaɪld/
23	/dʒ/	as in	Japan /dʒə'pæn/
24	/ŋ/	as in	English /'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/

Vowels

25	/i/	as in	see /si/
26	/ɪ/	as in	his /hɪz/
27	/ɛ/	as in	ten /tɛn/
28	/æ/	as in	stamp /stæmp/
29	/ɑ/	as in	father /'fɑðər/
30	/ɔ/	as in	saw /sɔ/
31	/ʊ/	as in	book /bʊk/
32	/u/	as in	you /yu/
33	/ʌ/	as in	sun /sʌn/
34	/ə/	as in	about /ə'baʊt/
35	/eɪ/	as in	name /neɪm/
36	/aɪ/	as in	my /maɪ/
37	/ɔɪ/	as in	boy /bɔɪ/
38	/aʊ/	as in	how /haʊ/
39	/oʊ/	as in	go /goʊ/
40	/ər/	as in	bird /bɜrd/
41	/ɪr/	as in	near /nɪr/
42	/ɛr/	as in	hair /hɛr/
43	/ɑr/	as in	car /kɑr/
44	/ɔr/	as in	more /mɔr/
45	/ʊr/	as in	tour /tɔr/

198 Madison Avenue
New York, NY 10016 USA

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP UK

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,
and education by publishing worldwide in
Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam
OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trademarks of Oxford University
Press in certain countries.

© Oxford University Press 2009

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored
in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without
the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly
permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate copyright
clearance organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope
of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University
Press, at the address above.

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must
impose this same condition on any acquirer.

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their
addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford
University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content.

Editorial Director: Laura Pearson
Publishing Manager: Erik Gundersen
Managing Editor: Louisa van Houten
Development Editor: Rosi Perea
Design Director: Susan Sanguily
Design Manager: Maj-Britt Hagsted
Senior Designer: Michael Steinhofner
Image Editor: Robin Fadool
Design Production Manager: Stephen White
Production Editors: Alissa Heyman, Greg Johnson
Manufacturing Manager: Shanta Persaud
Manufacturing Coordinator: Elizabeth Matsumoto

ISBN Student Book with Multi-ROM (pack): 978-019-472945-1

ISBN Student Book (pack component): 978-019-472946-8

ISBN Multi-ROM (pack component): 978-019-472959-8

Printed in China

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Illustrations by: Kathy Baxendale p. 85; Emma Dodd pp. 146, 147, 148, 149; Andy Hammond pp. 12, 72, 73,
81; Ned Jolliffe pp. 39, 54; Debbie Ryder p. 92; Gavin Reece p. 71; Barbara Bastian p. 100.

The publishers would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce photographs:
Istockphoto: p. 4 (bottom left); Royalty-free Images p. 4 (flags/Photodisc); Punchstock p. 4 (friends/Image
Source), Punchstock 8 (Jason/Photodisc), Punchstock p. 4 (Svetlana/Photodisc), Getty Images p. 4 (Akiko &
Mihor/McVay), Getty Images p. 4 (Rosa/D. Bosler), p. 4 (Tiago/M. Powell), Getty Images p. 4 (Henning/M.
Goldman), Getty Images p. 4 (Luc & Dominique/D. Roth), Somos Images/Art Life Images: p. 4 (bottom
center); Getty Images p. 5 (Tiago/M. Powell), Punchstock p. 5 (Svetlana/Photodisc), Shutterstock: p. 9
(Dublin); Corbis p. 5 (daughters/R. Ressmeyer), Corbis p. 5 (hammock/S. Maze); iStockphoto: p. 6 (phone);
Shutterstock: p. 6 (newspaper); iStockphoto: p. 6 (ticket); iStockphoto: p. 6 (postcard); stockxpert.com:
p. 6 (camera); p. 7 (Charles/Imagesource), Punchstock p. 7 (Alice/Photodisc), Alamy p. 8 (Massachusetts/
Neil Setchfield), Punchstock p. 9 (Jefferson/Photodisc), Shutterstock: p. 9 (Dublin); Alamy: Getty Images
p. 10 (Ireland/Terry Donnelly/The Image Bank), Punchstock p. 11 (family eating/Digital Vision/C. Edwards),
Getty Images p. 11 (in car/Photodisc Red/P. Mason), Corbis p. 11 (family/Ronnie Kaufman), Corbis p. 11
(grandfather & grandchildren/Randy Faris), Axiom p. 11 (umbrella/J. Holmes), Index Stock Images/Jupiter
Images: Rudi Von Briel 13 (background image); Alamy: Alan Schein 14 (Central Park); Radius Images/
Jupiter Images: p. 14 (hot dog and French fries); iStockphoto: p. 14 (tuna sandwich); iStockphoto: p. 14
(tea); Shutterstock: p. 14 (apple pie); Axiom p. 14 (family outside home/J. Sparshatt), Shutterstock: p. 14
(apple pie); p. 14 (chicken salad/Tim Hill), The Anthony Blake Photo Library: p. 14 (pizza/Roger Stowell),
The Anthony Blake Photo Library: p. 14 (chocolate cake/Sam Stowell), The Anthony Blake Photo Library:
p. 14 (tea/Howard Shooter), Radius Images/Jupiter Images: p. 14 (hot dog and French fries); The Anthony
Blake Photo Library: p. 14 (sparkling water/Maximilian Stock), The Anthony Blake Photo Library: p. 14
(burger/Robert Lawson), The Anthony Blake Photo Library: p. 14 (coffee/James Murphy), The Anthony
Blake Photo Library: p. 14 (ice cream/Tim Hill), The Anthony Blake Photo Library: p. 14 (orange juice/

Sue Atkinson); AMREF p. 17 (flying doctor); Lonely Planet Images p. 17 (Mexican guide/C. Beall),
Rex Features p. 18 (Iman/DM/J. Herrick), Rex Features p. 17 (Giorgio Locatelli/T. Buckingham),
Insight-Visual.com pp. 20-21 (Seumas McSparran); Insight: Alamy pp. 20-21 (Isle of Vatersay/David
Robertson), Richard T. Nowitz p. 22 (chef); p. 22 (lawyer/Photodisc); p. 22 (journalist/Photodisc); p. 22
(architect/Photodisc), Retna Pictures p. 22 (model/Graylock.com/G. James); Photostage/Donald Cooper
p. 22 (actor); Punchstock p. 22 (nurse/Photodisc), Punchstock p. 22 (shop assistant/Photodisc), Alamy p. 22
(pilot/A. Hess), Getty Images p. 23 (time conversation 2/A. Danaher), The Image Bank/Getty Images: Noah
Clayton p. 26 (jogging); Creasource/Masterfile: p. 27 (dancing); Brand X/Jupiter Images/Alamy: Lew
Robertson p. 27 (restaurant); p. 26 (cooking/Photodisc); p. 26 (skiing/Photodisc); p. 27 (football/Photodisc),
Punchstock p. 27 (sailing/Photodisc); p. 27 (listening to music/Corbis/Digital Stock); p. 27 (swimming/Photodisc); AGE
Fotostock: Sylvian Grandadam Punchstock p. 27 (girl reading/Brand X Pictures), Getty Images p. 27
(television/D. Day), Getty Images p. 27 (gym/S. Bottomley), Getty Images p. 27 (photography/Daly &
Newton), Getty Images p. 27 (computer game/Holos), Getty Images p. 27 (cinema/GDT), p. 29 (Rio beach);
Image Source Black/Jupiter Images: p. 29 (snowboarder); Masterfile: Alec Pydlowany p. 29 (ski slope);
Alamy p. 28 (Sumalee/A. Ryman), Punchstock p. 29 (Daniella/Goodshoot), Corbis p. 28 (festival/M. S. Lewis),
Punchstock p. 30 (RubberBall), ; Getty Images p. 35: AGE Fotostock/Superstock: 36 (Oval Office); AFP/Getty
Images: Karen Bleier 36 (White House street sign); Photri/Topham/The Image Works: p. 36 (Lincoln
Bedroom); Corbis: Brooks Kraft 36 (Oval Office); Super Stock: Ping Amranand p. 37: Alamy p. 38 (Seoul/
J. Bower), Art Directors & Trip Photo Library p. 38 (Samoa), Corbis p. 38 (Lisbon/N. Wheeler), Corbis p. 38
(New England/P. Schermeister), Corbis p. 38 (Alise/T. A. Gipstein), Getty Images p. 38 (Candy & Bert/
R. Chapple), Punchstock p. 38 (Manola/Photodisc), Punchstock p. 38 (Kwan/Image Source), Getty Images
p. 41 (Eva/S. W. Jones), Retna: Todd Owyong p. 44 (top); Sygma/Corbis: William Campbell p. 44 (bottom);
p. 45 (keyboard/Digital Revolution), Getty Images p. 42 (swimmers past/Hulton Archive), Getty Images
p. 42 (swimmers present/C. Cole), Corbis p. 43 (Einstein/Bettmann), Corbis p. 43 (Bronie/Bettmann), Action
Plus p. 43 (Woods/G. Kirk); Corbis p. 43 (Dali/Bettmann), Punchstock p. 47 (woman on mobile/Digital
Vision), Getty Images p. 47 (woman on phone/Anthony Masterson/Botanical), Getty Images p. 47 (Asian
woman on phone/Marc Romanelli/The Image Bank), Getty Images p. 47 (Jo/C. Renee), Getty Images p. 47
(call centre/D. Lees); Fame Pictures: Juan Rico 48: Getty Images for CFDA: Peter Kramer 49; Associated
Press: Denis Farrell p. 49 (bottom); Woodfin Camp/Aurora Photos/Kainulainen-LEH: pp. 50-51 (fall of the
Berlin Wall); Associated Press: Tsugufumi Matsumoto pp. 50-51 (first Nintendo game); Sipa Press: Carre
Christophe pp. 50-51 (Madonna); Corbis: Peter Turnley pp. 50-51 (Mikhail Gorbachev); Corbis p. 52 (Earhart
cockpit/Bettmann), Alamy p. 52 (Gagarin/Popperfoto), Rex Features p. 53 (rocket/TTD), p. 86 (Westlife/
J. Crane), Alamy p. 53 (Earhart standing/Popperfoto), Corbis p. 55 (S. Kennedy), Workbook Stock/Jupiter
Images: Nick Daly p. 59 (top right); Popperfoto p. 56 (phone calls), Getty Images p. 56 (cars/Topical Press
Agency), Corbis p. 56 (Coca-Cola/G. Naylor), Corbis p. 57 (photographs/H.A. Roberts), Corbis p. 56 (television/
Hulton-Deutsch Collection), Popperfoto p. 57 (planes); The Kobal Collection p. 57 (hamburgers/The
Advertising Archive Ltd), The Kobal Collection p. 57 (jeans/The Advertising Archive Ltd); Getty Images p. 57
(bikes/Topical Press Agency), Corbis p. 57 (records/Hulton-Deutsch Collection), Corbis p. 58 (Macmillan/
Hulton-Deutsch Collection), Getty Images p. 58 (Daguerre/Hulton Archive), Nick Daly p. 59 (top right);
Alamy p. 59; (Eric & Lori/J. Frank), ; Getty Images p. 60 (Easter eggs/G. Gay), Corbis pp. 60-61 (New Year/
Reuters), Corbis pp. 60-61 (Halloween/A. Skelley), Corbis p. 60 (birthday/N. Schaefer), Getty Images p. 61
(wedding/C. Havens), p. 61 (Thanksgiving/Photodisc), p. 83 (Naomi/Photodisc), Robert Harding World
Imagery p. 61 (Christmas/Digital Vision); Punchstock p. 61 (Mother's Day/Bananastock); Getty Images
p. 62 (Daisy/S. Biver), Getty Images p. 62 (Piers/D. Roth), iStockphoto: pp. 62-63 (milk); Shutterstock:
pp. 62-63 (tea); iStockphoto: pp. 62-63 (French fries); Shutterstock: pp. 62-63 (strawberries); Shutterstock:
pp. 62-63 (oranges); Shutterstock: pp. 62-63 (chocolate bar); Shutterstock: pp. 62-63 (carrots); stockxpert.
com: pp. 62-63 (bananas); stockxpert.com pp. 62-63 (cheese); Shutterstock: pp. 62-63 (tomatoes);
Shutterstock: pp. 62-63 (soda); StockFood/Getty Images: Lew Robertson pp. 62-63 (fish); iStockphoto:
pp. 62-63 (bowl of pasta); Shutterstock: pp. 62-63 (peas); Oxford University Press pp. 62-63 (coffee);
iStockphoto: pp. 62-63 (apple juice); Workbook Stock/Jupiter Images: Heather Elder pp. 62-63 (pizza);
stockxpert.com pp. 62-63 (cookies); Shutterstock: pp. 62-63 (hamburger); Shutterstock: pp. 62-63
(apples); Shutterstock: p. 64 (cookies); Anthony Blake Photo Library p. 65 (market/D. Marsden), FoodPix/
Jupiter Images Alan Richardson p. 68 (Pad Thai); FoodPix/Jupiter Images: Michael Pohuski p. 68 (American
breakfast); Getty Images pp. 66-67 (Arabs/W. Eastep), Getty Images pp. 66-67 (children eating/D. Sundberg),
Lonely Planet Images pp. 66-67 (noodles/P. Dymond), Lonely Planet Images pp. 66-67 (truck/D. McKinlay);
Alamy pp. 66-67 (rice harvest/Pictor International), Jupiter Images: p. 71 (child with grandparent); Corbis
pp. 66-67 (salamis/O. Franken), Corbis pp. 66-67 (sardines/J. Van Hasselt), Punchstock p. 66; Getty Images
pp. 66-67 (Sergio/B. Lang), Getty Images pp. 66-67 (Madalena/K. Steele), Getty Images pp. 66-67 (Graham/
S. Joel), Getty Images pp. 66-67 (Anke/M. Krasowitz), Anthony Blake Photo Library pp. 66-67 (Bijel/J. Lee
Studios), p. 68 (Bruschetta/Foodcollection.com), AsiaPix/Getty Images: p. 68 (Thai male); Stone/Getty
Images: Ron Krisel p. 68 (Italian female); Banana Stock/Jupiter Images: p. 69; Punchstock p. 70 (Alison, Ella
& Alfie/Photodisc), p. 70 (Andy/Photodisc), p. 70 (Poppy/Photodisc), Alamy p. 71 (Simon/Creatas), p. 71 (Colin/
Photodisc), p. 71 (Kate & Sofia/Corbis/Digital Stock), Jupiter Images: p. 71 (child with grandparent);
Bananastock/ImMagine: p. 75; Getty Images p. 78 (young footballer/Jean Louis Batt/Photographer's Choice),
p. 79 (Punchstock), Corbis p. 80 (whale watching/N. Fobes), Alamy p. 80 (Great Wall/View Stock China),
Alamy p. 80 (Grand Canyon/T. Gervis), Alamy p. 81 (rainforest/Robert Harding World Imagery), Alamy p. 81
(lions/T. Manley), Alamy p. 81 (scuba/G. Bell), Alamy p. 81 (surfing/D. Peebles), Corbis p. 81 (Everest/R. Holmes),
Associated Press p. 82 (Streeter portrait/H. Cabluck), Associated Press p. 83 (Streeter diving/P. Shearer); Rex
Features p. 83 (Belle portrait/P. Cooper), Rex Features p. 83 (free running/A. Paradise); Alamy p. 84 (foggy/
Imagina/A. Tsunoda), Getty Images p. 85 (umbrellas/Bald Headed Picture/Taxi), Getty Images p. 85 (couple
in rain/Andreas Pollok/Taxi), Photodisc/OU: p. 87, Getty Images p. 88 (S. Rothfeld), Moodboard/Alamy:
pp. 90-91 (top); Courtesy of Josie Dew: pp. 90-91; Photo Edit Inc.: Kayte M. Deioma 92 (airplane); Punchstock
p. 92 (canoeing/Design Pics), Pictures Colour Library p. 92 (Cadre Idris/George Chetland), Punchstock p. 92
(factory at night/Imageshop), Alamy p. 92 (Hyde Park/Alan Copson City Pictures), Alamy p. 92 (health
centre/VIEW Pictures Ltd), Alamy p. 92 (Art museum/Robert Harding Picture Library), Alamy p. 92 (West
End/Alan Copson City Pictures), Alamy p. 92 (Portsmouth/Boating Images Photo Library), Alamy p. 92
(thatched cottage/Rod Edwards); Getty Images p. 93 (AFP/J. J. Brown), Associated Press: p. 95 (stamp); p. 97
(Corbis), Good Shoot/Jupiter Unlimited: p. 98 (woman with backpack); p. 98 (temple/Photodisc); Alamy
p. 98 (Wales/The Photolibrary Wales), Alamy p. 99 (girls/L. Beddoe), Getty Images p. 99 (women/G. & M. D.
de Lossy); Masterfile: Alberto Biscaro p. 100; Robert Harding/Jupiter Images: Robert Francis p. 102.

Commissioned Photography by: Gareth Boden pp. 2, 3, 7 (Lisa, Marco & Emma), 8, 15 (James & Danka), 23
(time conversation 1), 32, 33, 34 (Suzie & Matt), 35 (Suzie & Matt), 40 (Lucia, Dominic), 41 (Ben & Ana,
Philip & Elena), 43 (Emma & Marco), 47 (Emma & Marco), 58 (Valentine), 77, 88 (Ryan), 96 (Suzie &
livingroom), 98 (Robert), 101; Maggie Milner pp. 9 (Patrick); MM Studies pp. 6, 34 (cups & cutlery), 64-65
(market stall); Ken Karp Photography pp. 4, 10, 12, 13, 24, 25, 94, 95, 103.

We are grateful to the following for providing locations: Cibo Café and Restaurant, Oxford p. 15; Quarks Internet
Café and Games Zone, Richmond pp. 2, 3; Caroline Reading, Oxford pp. 32-35; Roberto Gerrards,
Hertford & the owner Rob Farrell p. 77; The Swan Language School, Oxford p. 31.

Cover photos: Pictal/AGE Fotostock (top left); Photo Alto/Jupiter Images: James Hardy (top center);
dbimages/Alamy: Roy Johnson (top right); Photo Alto/AGE Fotostock: incant Hazat (left center);
Masterfile: (right center); Masterfile: (bottom right); ASP/Getty Images: Kirstin Scholtz (bottom left).

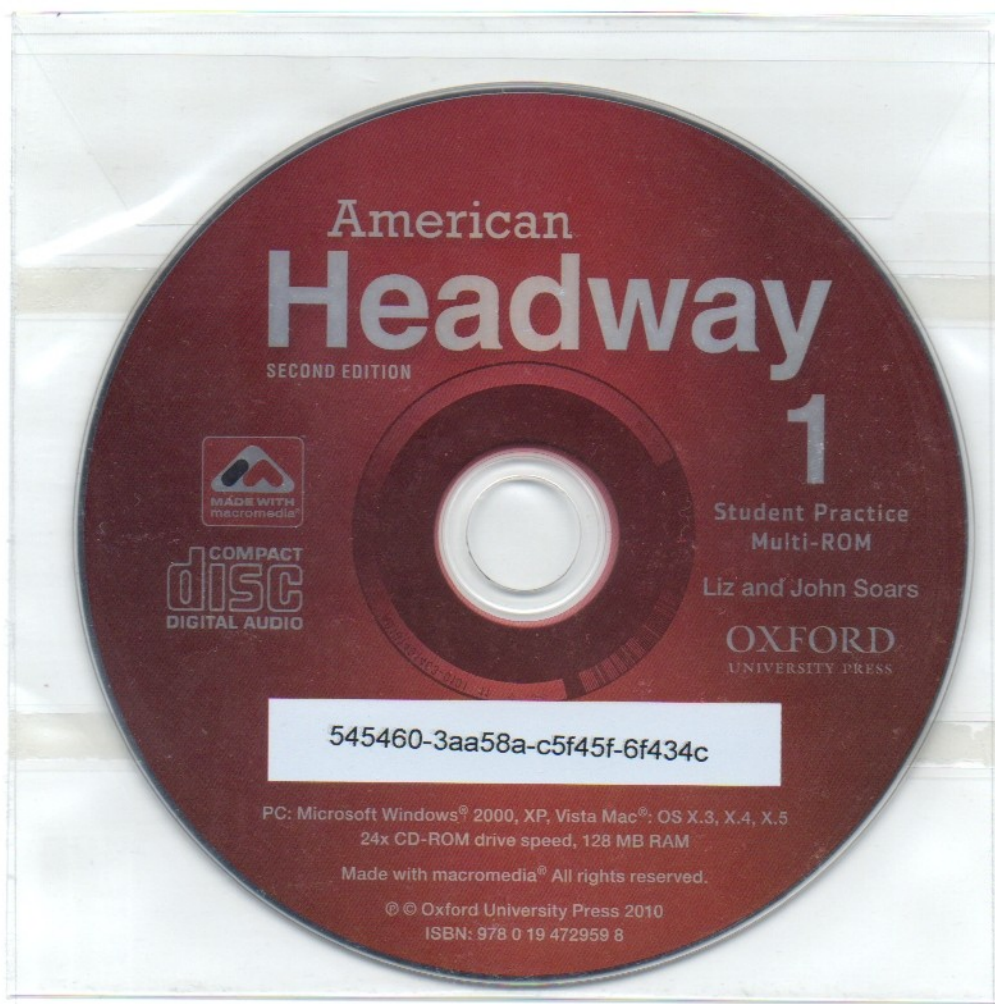
The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and
adaptations of copyright material: pp. 20-21 'It's a job for nine men, but someone's got to do it' by Rebecca
Fowler, 3 May 1998, The Mail Night and Day Magazine. Reproduced by permission of The Mail on Sunday.
pp. 44-45 Taken from 'Joss Stone Feels Bad For Britney' by ChartAttack.com Staff, 22 October 2003,
www.chartattack.com. Reproduced by permission, p. 74 'Flying Without Wings' Words & Music by Steve
Mac & Wayne Hector © Copyright 1999 Rokstone Music (50%)/Rondor Music (London) Limited (50%).
All Rights Reserved. International Copyright Secured, pp. 82-83 Taken from 'The art of Le Parkour' by
Hugh Schofield, 19 April 2002, BBC News Online. Reproduced by permission of JP BOSSON Management
and the BBC, pp. 82-83 'Into the deep' by Libby Brooks, 23 July 2003, The Guardian © The Guardian.
Reproduced by permission, pp. 90-91 Taken from Josie Dew's web site www.josiedew.co.uk, 2 April 2004.
Reproduced by permission.

How to access the *American Headway, Second Edition* Student Book 1 audio files

The new *American Headway* Student Audio Download Center allows students to access and download audio files for the listening activities in the Student Book. To find this content, visit the *American Headway* Student Audio Download Center at www.oup.com/elt/americanheadway2e. Then navigate the files by searching for the unit, page number, and exercise.

Student Practice Multi-ROM tracks

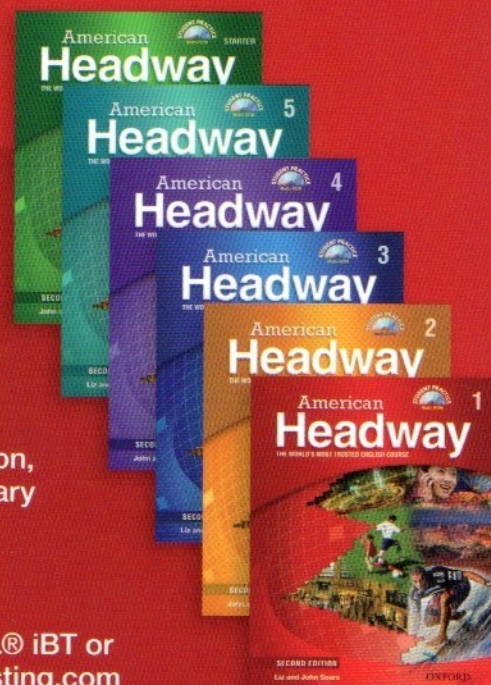
Track	Unit	Topic	Speakers
1	1	Making introductions	Amanda, Mike, Cedric, Robert
2	2	Who's in your family?	Will, Beth, Kami
3	3	Talk about a friend.	Robert, Vangile, Seana, Zaida
4	4	What is your favorite season?	Amanda, Seana, Joe, Kami
5	5	Talk about your neighborhood.	Andrew, Lindsay, Yuhi
6	6	Where were you yesterday?	Will, Kami, Joshua, Robert
7	7	When's your birthday?	Joshua, Robert, Vangile, Dan, Jen
8	8	Talk about your day so far.	Will, Amanda, Beth, Nick
9	9	What food and drink do you like?	Dan, Zaida, Lindsay, Yuhi
10	10	What are you wearing?	Kami, Dan, Beth, Amanda
11	11	What are you going to do?	Lindsay, Joe, Joshua, Zaida
12	12	Talk about places you have been.	Seana, Will, Joshua, Robert



American Headway

THE WORLD'S MOST TRUSTED ENGLISH COURSE

- New** Advanced title completes 6-level curriculum
- New** Student Practice Multi-ROM provides hours of interactive grammar, vocabulary, writing, and listening practice
- New** Teacher Resource Center brings together all classroom presentation, practice, and assessment materials in one customizable online library
- New** Spotlight on Testing lessons in Workbooks 1-5 prepare students for success on the TOEFL® iBT and other standardized exams
- New** Access to automatically-graded, online practice test for the TOEFL® iBT or your choice of other exam available through www.oxfordenglishtesting.com



Oxford › making **digital** sense



FOR STUDENTS:

Student Book with Multi-ROM
Workbook with Spotlight on Testing
Workbook Audio CD

Student Practice Multi-ROM
Student Audio Download Center:
www.oup.com/elt/americanheadway2e
 oxfordenglishtesting.com

FOR TEACHERS:

Teacher's Book
Test Generator CD-ROM
Class Audio CDs

Log on Program Tour and
Teacher Resource Center:
www.oup.com/elt/teacher/americanheadway2e

NEW Student Practice Multi-ROM

Variety of interactive exercises offer grammar, vocabulary, writing, and listening practice

Grammar
Vocabulary
Writing
Video

Unit 4 What is your favorite season?

Watch the video. Click on the words that you hear.



Amanda

Check answers

Amanda My birthday is during the summer, winter.

Amanda During the summer, I go surfing swimming and sailing...

Seana My favorite season is the fall, winter.

Seana I love to ski snowboard, I love to skate, and I enjoy colder temperatures.

Joe My favorite season is actually the fall, spring.

Joe And Thanksgiving Halloween is around that time...

Kami My favorite season is the spring because the water weather is perfect.

Kami I love having picnics outside with my friends, family.

◀ VIDEO MENU
EXIT ▶

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com

*TOEFL is a registered trademark of Educational Testing Service (ETS).
This publication is not endorsed or approved by ETS.



ISBN 978-0-19-472945-1



9 780194 729451